

EGS49

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATIN PRIMER

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION

*Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.*

HOR. ad Pis. 42

NEW IMPRESSION

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

89 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1901

Reprinted from the Edition of 1879.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN COURSE

By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D.

Late Regius Professor of Greek; Canon of Ely.

The REVISED LATIN PRIMER. Fop. 8vo. 2s. 3d.

The SHORTER LATIN PRIMER. Fop. 8vo. 1s.

EXERCISES on the SHORTER LATIN PRIMER,
By M. G. and J. E. KENNEDY and H. WILKINSON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER. Edited with the sanction of the Head Masters of the Nine Schools included in Her Majesty's Commission, viz., Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylor's, Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow, and Charterhouse. 12mo 2s. 6d.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, STEPS to LATIN: Easy Companion Books to the Public School Latin Primer for Beginners. PART I. *Accidence and Simple Construction*, price 2s. 6d. PART II. *Syntax*, price 3s. 6d. The KEY to PARTS I. and II. price 5s. 2d. net, post free. (For Teachers only.)

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Part III. Manual of the Rules of Construction in the Latin Compound Sentence; being a SUPPLEMENT to the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. price 1s.

CURRICULUM STILI LATINI, or Higher Exercises in Latin Prose Composition; exemplifying principally the Latin Compound Sentence, and also Latin Syntax generally, for *viva voce* as well as written use. 12mo. 4s. 6d.—KEY, price 7s. 8d. net, post free. (For Teachers only.)

PALÆSTRA LATINA, or Second Latin Reading Book; adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. 5s.

* * * The above four books form a Course of Latin Instruction, and are specially adapted to facilitate and extend the use of the Public School Latin Primer.

The CHILD'S LATIN PRIMER, or First Latin Lessons; with Questions and Exercises, adapted to the principles of the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. 2s.

The CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE, extracted from Dr. KENNEDY's Child's Latin Primer; containing all that is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. 1s.

AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR of the LATIN LANGUAGE, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR, for the Use of Schools, Colleges, and Private Students. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The WORKS of VIRGIL, Latin Text, with English Commentary and Appendices. With Two Maps. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 89 Paternoster Row, London
New York and Bombay.

WORKS BY BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

Fcp. 8vo. price 2s. 6d.

THE REVISED LATIN PRIMER.

THIS book is a complete revision of the Public School Latin Primer.

The report of the Public School Commission of 1882 having recommended the use of a common Latin Grammar in Public Schools, the Head-Masters of the Schools included in that Commission resolved to adopt my Elementary Latin Grammar, which had for some years been widely used, as the basis of such a common Grammar, and the Public School Latin Primer, prepared in accordance with that resolution, was published with their sanction in the year 1886.

During the period which has since elapsed, various improvements have from time to time occurred to me or been suggested by others. But, looking at the joint authority under which the Primer was issued, I did not feel myself free to introduce into it the alterations which under other circumstances I should have made. When, however, I found that a revision of the Primer was generally desired, and when, after communication with the Conference of Head-Masters, I found myself in a position to act in the matter of revision upon my own responsibility, I gladly entered upon the work of which the present Revised Primer is the result.

The greatest care has been taken to make the arrangement in respect of form as clear and plain as possible. For this purpose I have (1) brought into the text under the appropriate headings the matter which in the original Primer is contained in Appendix I. (2) Omitted such technical terms as seemed to be reasonably open to objection.

THE SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.

Fcp. 8vo. price ONE SHILLING.

THIS little book is published in compliance with a wish expressed to me by a large number of Masters, including many teachers in Preparatory Schools and in the lower forms of Public Schools.

It is intended to be a simple manual for beginners in Latin, preparatory to the use of the Revised Latin Primer.

In order to facilitate the passage of the learner from one book to the other, and also to make it possible for them to be used side by side if necessary, this Shorter Primer has been made, as far as it goes, in the main identical with the Revised Primer, and arranged on the same plan.

It contains the memorial portion of the Accidence, with a few of the most important notes and explanations, and the more elementary parts of the Syntax of the Simple Sentence.

A short outline of the Compound Sentence, which did not form part of my original plan, has been added in accordance with the desire of several experienced teachers. In this part it has been necessary, for the sake of brevity, to make the arrangement and wording somewhat different from that of the Revised Primer.

In this book, as in the Revised Primer, I have endeavoured to simplify the marking of quantity by placing the mark of quantity, as a rule, only on the long vowels. It must therefore be noted that vowels not marked are generally to be taken as short, short quantity being only marked where it has seemed necessary to guard against mistake.

EXERCISES ON THE SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.

By M. G. and J. E. KENNEDY and H. WILKINSON, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of MASTERS only, post free, 2s. 6d. net.

JNGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 89 Paternoster Row, London
New York and Bombay.

PREFACE.

THE 'Public School Latin Primer' was not put forth by its compilers as a First Book for children beginning Latin in preparatory schools or with private teachers, but as a concise manual of facts and code of rules in Latin, to be memorially learnt, with suitable practice, in those departments of Public Schools to which its contents are applicable. It was not supposed that all sections and parts of sections in the first ninety pages would be learnt in a first memorial course; nor was it doubted that some passages in accidence would be sufficiently taught by means of questions and answers. These they held to be matters of detail, which could only be left to the judgment of those who teach or direct the mode of teaching. For the facilitation of these lessons to young beginners they relied (1) on the use of good Help-books, adapted to the Primer, leading up to it, and referring to it; and (2) on the 'vis viva' of good teaching, without which all must fail. Of such Help-books many have been published by various authors of large experience in teaching, and, as some of these have passed through numerous editions, they seem to have answered their purpose.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET now in use is the English without W. The Letters have two forms: (1) the Capital, or ancient; and (2) the Small, or modern form.

(1)	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P
(2)	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	p
	q	r	s	t	u	v	x	y	z							

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y.
I and u are called Semi-consonant Vowels.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with Vowels*: of these

- The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t:
- The Nasals are m, n:
- The Liquids are l, r:
- The Spirants f, h, j, s, v:
- The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. K remains in a few words before a: as, Kalendae.
2. Y and z only in words from the Greek: as, Dryas, zona.
3. Q blends with u or v: as, quis or quis.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels)
ae (æ), oe (œ), au: three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.

. PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 5. Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (˘), long (—), or doubtful (˘˘), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful: fūgēŕs.

A Vowel may be—

(1) Short or long by nature: āmās.

(2) Short by nature, but long by position: vīndēx: § 162. 4.

(3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position: quādrūplo. § 162. 5.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds: I. NOUNS; II. VERB; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names something:

Rex, a king; **Caesār**, *Caesar*.

(a) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.
All others are COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality:

Mārē vastum, the vast sea.

Vastum is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of mārē.*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

Tū, thou; **mānūs haec**, this hand.

II. (4) The VERB states what something is, does, or suffers:

Hōmīnēs cānunt, men sing.†

* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE:
Croesus rex Lydōrum, *Croesus, king of the Lydians*; where **rex** is APPOSITE to **Croesus**, and agrees with it in Case.

† **Hōmīnēs** is called the SUBJECT.

Cānunt is called the PREDICATE.

When we say,

Mors est prōpinquā, death is nigh,

Mors is the Subject;

Est is called the COPULA;

Prōpinquā is called the COMPLEMENT;

And Copula with Complement is the Predicate. § 82.

NOUNS.

VERB.

III. (5) The ADVERB shews Where, When, or How :

Hic curre nunc celeriter, *run hither now quickly.*

- (6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun ;
and shews the relation of it to some other word .

Stō ad fōrēs, *I stand at the door.*

- (7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses :
Ōvēs ēt āvēs, *sheep and birds.*

- (8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation : „

Mecē ningīt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

Note. There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the*, in English. Thus *lux* may mean a *light*, the *light*, or simply *light*.

§ 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight :

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, | 5. Adverb, |
| 2. Adjective, | 6. Preposition, |
| 3. Pronoun, | 7. Conjunction, |
| 4. Verb, | 8. Interjection, |

Which have Flexion.

Which are without Flexion.*

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION.

- (2) Nouns are DECLINED.

Verbs are CONJUGATED.

- (3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS : NUMBER, CASE, GENDER ;
A Verb five . VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

[a. The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

b. A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

c. The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

d. The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural : † *menša-*, *dōmīno-*, *lēon-*, *māri-*, *grādu-dīe-*.

e. The Stem of a Verb is shewn in the Imperative Mood : *āma-*, *audi-*, *mōne-*. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* must be cast off : *rēg-ē*; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *ērē* : *fa-rē*, *re-rē*, *lūb-ērē*.

f. The ROOT is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in *āgītārē*, *āgīta-* is the Stem, but *ag-* the Root, as shewn by comparing **g-ērē*, *ag-men*. And *g* is the Root-character.]

* Except the Comparison of Adverbs, § 37.

† Casting off *-r* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions ; *-um* in the Third and Fourth.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two:

1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, *mensă, a table*;
2. PLURAL, of more than one, *mensae, tables*.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

Answers the question

1. NOMINATIVE.	. Who or what?	Quis dedit? . . . }	Vir,
		Who gave? . . . }	A man.
2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed)		{	Vir,
			O man.
3. ACCUSATIVE .	. Whom or what?	Quem videt? . . . }	Virum,
		Whom see I? . . . }	A man.
4. GENITIVE .	. Whose or whereof?	Cujus donum? . . . }	Viri,
		Whose gift? . . . }	A man's.
5. DATIVE .	. To or for whom or what?	Cui datum? . . . }	Virō,
		To whom given? . . . }	To a man.
6. ABLATIVE * .	. By, with, &c., whom or what?	Ā quō datum? . . . }	Ā virō,
		By whom given? . . . }	By a man.

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives.—

	I.	II.	III.	IV. ^c	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	i	is	is	ei
Gen. Plur.	Arum	Orum	um† or ūm	Uum	Erum

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in *a*.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like *dōminis, filiūs*.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: *by, with, from, on, upon, of, for, at, than*.

The Consonant before *um* is the Character. See § 11 c; § 21 (a).

THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in *ā*; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in *ās*, *ēs*, Masculine, and *ē* Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Mensā , a table	Mensae , tables, f.
Voc.	Mensā , O table	Mensae , O tables
Acc.	Mensam , a table	Mensās , tables
Gen.	Mensae , of a table	Mensārum , of tables
Dat.	Mensae , to or for a table	Mensīs , to or for tables
Abl.	Mensā , by, with, or from a table	Mensīs , by, with, or from tables

*Decline also:

	Singular.			
	<i>Goddess, f.</i>	<i>Son of Theseus, m.</i>	<i>Aeneas, m.</i>	<i>Cybele, f.</i>
Nom.	Dē-ā	Thēsīd-ēs	Aenē-ās	Cýbēl-ē
Voc.	Dē-ā	Thēsīd-ē (ā, ā)	Aenē-ā	Cýbēl-ē
Acc.	Dē-am	Thēsīd-ēn (am)	Aenē-ān (am)	Cýbēl-ēn
Gen.	Dē-ae	Thēsīd-ae	Aenē-ae	Cýbēl-ēs (ae)
Dat.	Dē-ae	Thēsīd-ae	Aenē-ae	Cýbēl-ae
Abl.	Dē-ā	Thēsīd-ē (ā)	Aenē-ā	Cýbēl-ē (ā)
	Plural.			
N. V.	Dē-ae	Thēsīd-ae	(as Mensā,	(as Mensā,
Acc.	Dē-ās	Thēsīd-ās	but rare.)	but rare.)
Gen.	Dē-Ārum	Thēsīd-um		
D. Abl.	Dē-ābūs.	Thēsīd-īs.		

Note.—Masc. Substantives in *ā* are declined like *mensā*: *pōētā*, a poet.

THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in *ūs*, *ēr*, generally Masculine, and in *um*, Neuter.

(a) MASCULINE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Dōmīnūs , a lord	Dōmīnī , lords, m.
Voc.	Dōmīnē , O lord	Dōmīnī , O lords
Acc.	Dōmīnum , a lord	Dōmīnōs , lords
Gen.	Dōmīnī , of a lord	Dōmīnōrum , of lords
Dat.	Dōmīnō , to or for a lord	Dōmīnīs , to, or for lords
Abl.	Dōmīnō , by, with, or from a lord	Dōmīnīs , by, with, or from lords.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Pūēr , a boy	Pūērī , boys, m.
Voc.	Pūēr , O boy	Pūērī , O boys
Acc.	Pūērum , a boy	Pūērōs , boys
Gen.	Pūērī , of a boy	Pūērōrum , of boys
Dat.	Pūērō , to or for a boy	Pūērīs , to or for boys
Abl.	Pūērō , by, with, or from a boy	Pūērīs , by, with, or from boys.

Nom.	Māgistēr , the master	Māgistrī , masters, m.
Voc.	Māgistēr , O master	Māgistrī , O masters
Acc.	Māgistrum , the master	Māgistrōs , masters
Gen.	Māgistrī , of the master	Māgistrōrum , of masters
Dat.	Māgistrō , to or for the master	Māgistrīs , to or for masters
Abl.	Māgistrō , by, with, or from the master	Māgistrīs , by, with, or from masters.

(b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bellum , war	Bellā , wars
Voc.	Bellum , O war	Bellā , O wars
Acc.	Bellum , war	Bellā , wars
Gen.	Bellī , of war	Bellōrum , of wars
Dat.	Bellō , to or for war	Bellis , to or for wars
Abl.	Bellō , by, with, or from war	Bellis , by, with, or from wars.

Decline also:

	Son, m.	Coin, m.	God, m.	Cloak, n.
Nom.	Filī-ūs	Numm-ūs	Dē-ūs	Pallī-um
Voc.	Filī	Numm-ō	Dē-ūs	Pallī-um
Acc.	Filī-um	Numm-um	Dē-um	Pallī-um
Gen.	Filī-ī or Filī	Numm-ī	Dē-ī	Pallī-ī or Pall-
D. Abl.	Filī-ō	Numm-ō	Dē-ō	Pallī-ō

Plural.

N.V.	Filī-ī	Numm-ī	Dī (also Dēī)	Pallī-ā
Acc.	Filī-ōs	Numm-ōs	Dē-ōs	Pallī-ā
Gen.	Filī-ōrum	Numm-ōrum	Dē-ōrum or or Numm-um Dē-um	Pallī-ōrum
D. Abl.	Filī-is.	Numm-is.	Dīs (also Dēīs).	Pallī-is

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns).

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions :

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

[Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division ; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.]

§ 21.

I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

(a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Jūdex , a judge, or O judge	Jūdīcēs , judges, or O judges, c.
Acc.	Jūdīcem , a judge	Jūdīcēs , judges
Gen.	Jūdīcis , of a judge	Jūdīcum , of judges
Dat.	Jūdīci , to or for a judge	Jūdīcībūs , to or for judges
Abl.	Jūdīcē , by, with, or from a judge	Jūdīcībūs , by, with, or from judges.
N. V.	Āetās , an age, or O age	Āetātēs , ages, or O ages, f.
Acc.	Āetātem , an age	Āetātēs , ages
Gen.	Āetātis , of an age	Āetātum , of ages
Dat.	Āetāti , to or for an age	Āetātībūs , to or for ages
Abl.	Āetātē , by, with, or from an age	Āetātībūs , by, with, or from ages.
N. V.	Lēō , a lion, or O lion	Lēōnēs , lions, or O lions, m.
Acc.	Lēōnem , a lion	Lēōnēs , lions
Gen.	Lēōnis , of a lion	Lēōnum , of lions
Dat.	Lēōni , to or for a lion	Lēōnībūs , to or for lions
Abl.	Lēōnē , by, with, or from a lion	Lēōnībūs , by, with, or from lions.
N. V.	Virgō , a virgin, or O virgin	Virgīnēs , virgins, or O virgins, f.
Acc.	Virgīnem , a virgin	Virgīnēs , virgins
Gen.	Virgīnis , of a virgin	Virgīnum , of virgins
Dat.	Virgīni , to or for a virgin	Virgīnībūs , to or for virgins
Abl.	Virgīnē , by, with, or from a virgin	Virgīnībūs , by, with, or from virgins.

Decline also :

	Singular.					
	<i>Law, f.</i>	<i>Foot, m.</i>	<i>Love, m.</i>	<i>Cinder, c.</i>	<i>Father, m.</i>	
N. V.	Lex	Pēs	Āmōr	Cīnīs	Pātr	—
Acc.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	em
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	is
Dat.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	i
Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ē
	Plural.					
N. V. A.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ēs
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	um
D. Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	ibūs

(b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Nōmēn , name, or O name	Nōmīnā , names, or O names
Acc.	Nōmēn , name	Nōmīnā , names
Gen.	Nōmīnī , of a name	Nōmīnum , of names
Dat.	Nōmīnī , to or for a name	Nōmīnībūs , to or for names
Abl.	Nōmīnē , by, with, or from a name	Nōmīnībūs , by, with, or from names.
N. V.	Ōpūs , a work, or O work	Ōpērā , works, or O works
Acc.	Ōpūs , a work	Ōpērā , works
Gen.	Ōpērīs , of a work	Ōpērūm , of works
Dat.	Ōpērī , to or for a work	Ōpērībūs , to or for works
Abl.	Ōpērē , by, with, or from a work	Ōpērībūs , by, with, or from works.

Decline also the Neuter Nouns :

	Singular.					
	<i>Head.</i>	<i>Lightning.</i>	<i>Ice.</i>	<i>Hard wood.</i>	<i>Body.</i>	
N. V. A.	Cāpūt	Fulgūr	Crūs	Rōbūr	Corpūs	—
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	is
Dat.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	i
Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ē
	Plural.					
N. V. A.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ā
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	um
D. Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	ibūs

II. I-NOUNS.

(a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Ōvis , a sheep, or O sheep	Ōvēs , sheep, or O sheep, f.
Acc.	Ōvem , a sheep	Ōvēs , or Ōvis ,* sheep
Gen.	Ōvis , of a sheep	Ōvīum , of sheep
Dat.	Ōvi , to or for a sheep	Ōvībūs , to or for sheep
Abl.	Ōvē , by, with, or from a sheep	Ōvībūs , by, with, or from sheep.
N. V.	Nūbēs , a cloud, or O cloud	Nūbēs , clouds, or O clouds, f.
Acc.	Nūbem , a cloud	Nūbēs , or Nūbis ,* clouds
Gen.	Nūbis , of a cloud	Nūbīum , of clouds
Dat.	Nūbi , to or for a cloud	Nūbībūs , to or for clouds
Abl.	Nūbē , by, with, or from a cloud	Nūbībūs , by, with, or from clouds.
N. V.	Dens , a tooth, or O tooth	Dentēs , teeth, or O teeth, m.
Acc.	Dentem , a tooth	Dentēs , or Dentis ,* teeth
Gen.	Dentis , of a tooth	Dentīum ,† of teeth
Dat.	Denti , to or for a tooth	Dentībūs , to or for teeth
Abl.	Dentē , by, with, or from a tooth	Dentībūs , by, with, or from teeth.

Decline also :

	Singular.			
	<i>Cough, f.</i>	<i>Key, f.</i>	<i>Canal, m.</i>	<i>Shower, m.</i>
N. V.	Tuss-Is	Clāv-Is	Cānāl-Is	Imbr-ēs
Acc.	Tuss-im	Clāv-em or im	Cānāl-em	Imbr-em
Gen.	Tuss-Is	Clāv-Is	Cānāl-Is	Imbr-Is
Dat.	Tuss-I	Clāv-I	Cānāl-I	Imbr-I
Abl.	Tuss-I	Clāv-ē or I *	Cānāl-I	Imbr-ē or I
	Plural.			
N. V. A.	Tuss-ēs	Clāv-ēs	Cānāl-ēs	Imbr-ēs *
Gen.	Tuss-īum	Clāv-īum	Cānāl-īum	Imbr-īum
D. Abl.	Tuss-ībūs	Clāv-ībūs	Cānāl-ībūs	Imbr-ībūs

* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *ī*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.

† I-nouns in -ans -ens, often drop *i* in Syn. Plur.; *pārentum* for *pārentium*.

(b) NEUTER.

Singular.

	<i>Bone.</i>	<i>Sea.</i>	<i>Spur.</i>	<i>Animal.</i>
N. V. A.	Os	Mārē	Calcār	Ānimāl
Gen.	Ossīs	Māris	Calcārīs	Ānimālīs
Dat.	Ossī	Māri	Calcārī	Ānimālī
Abl.	Ossē	Māri	Calcārī	Ānimālī

Plural.

	<i>Bone.</i>	<i>Sea.</i>	<i>Spur.</i>	<i>Animal.</i>
N. V. A.	Ossā	Māriā	Calcārīā	Ānimālīā
Gen.	Ossīum	Mārium	Calcārīum	Ānimālīum
D. Abl.	Ossībūs.	Māribūs.	Calcārībūs.	Ānimālībūs.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in **ūs**; Neuter Nouns in **ū**.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. V.	Grādūs , a step, or O step	Grādūs , steps, or O steps, m.
Acc.	Grādum , a step	Grādūs , steps
Gen.	Grādūs , of a step	Grādūum , of steps
Dat.	Grādūi , to or for a step	Grādībūs (ūbūs), to or for steps
Abl.	Grādū , by, with, or from a step	Grādībūs (ūbūs), by, with, or from steps.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. V. A.	Gēnū , a knee, or O knee	Gēnūā , knees, or O knees, n.
Gen.	Gēnūs , of a knee	Gēnūum , of knees
Dat.	Gēnū , to or for a knee	Gēnībūs (ūbūs), to or for knees
Abl.	Gēnū , by, with, or from a knee	Gēnībūs (ūbūs), by, with, or from knees.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION (E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in **ēs**. (Concerning **dēs**, see § 31.)

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. V.	Dīēs , a day, or O day	Dīēs , days, or O days, c.
Acc.	Dīem , a day	Dīēs , days
Gen.	Dīēi , of a day	Dīērum , of days
Dat.	Dīēi , to or for a day	Dīēbūs , to or for days
Abl.	Dīē , by, with, or from a day	Dīēbūs , by, with, or from days.

§25.

ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

- (1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only :

Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justitiā,
Vēr, aq̄yum, lētum, sanguis, pūcritiā.

Note. -Add āēr, *air* (Acc. S. āērā or āērem), aether, *sky*
(Acc. S. aethērā or aethērem), with many more.

- (2) Many are used in the Plural only :

Mānēs, libērī, Pēnātēs,
Divitiāe, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,
With armā, mūniā, māgālīā,
And festive seasons, as Flōrālīā.

- (3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural :

Castrum, *a fort.*
Castrā, *a camp.*

- (3) Many Nouns are Defective in Case :

Dāpīs, ōpīs, vīs.

- (5) Some Nouns take forms from two Declensions :

Lau.ūs, *bay-tree*, and others.*

- (6) Some vary the Gender :

Jōcūs, *jest*, Pl. jōcī and jōcā ;
Lōcūs, *place*, Pl. lōcī and lōcā ;
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnā ;
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastrī and rastrā.

a. Decline the Defective Nouns :

Singular.

	<i>Feast, f.</i>	<i>Fruit, f.</i>	<i>Help, f.</i>	<i>Prayer, f.</i>	<i>Change, f.</i>	
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	—
Gen.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	—	Vīc-	īs
Dat.	Dāp-	Frūg-	—	Prēc-	—	ī
Abl.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	ē

Full Plural, with endings **ēs, um, ībūs**, as § 21 : except vīc-**ūm**.

S.N. Vis. *strength, f.* Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, vīribūs.

b. Dōmūs, *house, f.*, is like Grādūs ; but forms Sing. Dat. -ūī or -ō.
Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs or -ōs. Gen. ūm or ōrum.

Dōmī, *at home*.

* Laurūs, also cūpressūs, *cypress-tree*, ficūs, *fig-tree*, pinūs, *pine*, are partly O-nouns partly U-nouns ; having Gen. S., Abl. S., and N. Pl., Acc. Pl., like dōmūs and grādūs

GENDER OF NOUNS.

26.

GENERAL RULES.

- (1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.
- (2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.
- (3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.
- (4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: *fās, nefās*, and the Verb-noun Infinitive;

Est summum nefās fallerē,
Deceit is gross impiety.

- (5) Common are to either sex:
Artifex and *opifex*,
Convicta, *vātēs*, *advēnā*,
Testis, *civis*, *incōlā*,
Pārens, *sācerdōs*, *tustōs*, *vindex*,
Adūlescens, *infans*, *index*,
Jūdex, *hērēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*,
Princeps, *mūniceps*, *conjux*,
Obsēs, *ālēs*, *interprēs*,
Auctōr, *exūl*; and with these
Bēs, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tigrīs*, *grūs*,
Cānis and *anguis*, *serpens*, *sūs*.*

§ 27.

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the First Declension in *ā*, *ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *ās*, *ēs*, are Masculine.

Exc. Nouns denoting males in *ā*
 Are by meaning Masculine;
 And added to the Males must be
Hādriā, the *Hadriatic Sea*.

* Many of these words (with others, as *hostis*, *hospēs*, *mīlēs*, *praesēs*, *augūr*, *aurigā*) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: as, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tigrīs*, *grūs*, *sūs*. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: as, *pārens*, *conjux*, *sācerdōs*, *vātēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*, *cānis*: in Plural generally Masculine.

§ 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ūs, ēr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

Exc. Fēmininā stand in *ūs*,
 , Alvūs, arctūs, carbāsūs,
 Cōlūs, hūmūs, pampinūs,
 Vannūs; names of Plants, as pīrūs;
 Names of Jewels, as sapphīrūs.
 Neuter, pēlāgūs and vīrūs.
 Vulgūs Neuter commonly,
 Rarely Masculine, we see.

§ 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule. I.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o, or, os, er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*
 Gēnūs Fēmininum show.
 But ligō, ordō, praedō, cardō,
 Are Masculā: and Common Saargō.
- (2) Verbal Nouns in *-io* call
 Fēmininā, one and all:
 Masculā will only be
 Things that you may touch or see,
 (As curculiō, vespertiliō,
 Pūgīō, scipiō, and pāpiliō.)
 With the Nouns that number show,
 Such as terniō, sēniō.
- (3) Echō Fēmininum name:
 Cārō (carnis) is the same.
- (4) Fēmininum call arbōr;
 Neuter aequōr, marmōr, cōr.
- (5) Of the Substantives in *os*,
 Fēminina cōs and dōs:
 While, of Latin Nouns, alone
 Neuter are ōs (ossis), bone,
 And ōs (ōris), mouth: a few
 Greek in ōs are Neuter too.*
- (6) Many Neuters end in *er*,
 Sīlēr, ācēr, verbēr, vēr,
 Tūbēr, ūbēr, and cādāvēr,
 Pīpēr, ītēr, and pāpāvēr.

* As mēlōs, melo^ς, ēpōs, epic poem.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

- (7) Fēmīnīnă, compēs, tēgēs,
 Mercēs, mergēs, quīēs, sēgēs,
 Though their Genitives increase.—
 With the Neuters reckon *as*.

Princ. Rule. II.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is, as, aus, x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

- Exc. (1)* Many Nouns in *is* we find
 To the Masculă assigned:
 Amnis, axis, caulis, collis,
 Clunis, crinis, fascis, follis,
 Fustis, ignis, orbis, ensis,
 Panis, piscis, postis, mensis,
 Torris, unguis, and canalis,
 Vectis, vermis, and natalis,
 Lapis, sanguis, cucumis,
 Pulvis, casses, Manes, glis.
- (2) Chiefly Masculă we view,
 Sometimes Fēmīnīnă too,
 Callis, sentis, funis, finis,
 Torquis, and, in poets, cinis.
- (3) Masculă are ādāmās,
 Elēphās, mās, gīgās, ās:
 Vās (vādīs) too as Male is known,
 Vās (vāsīs) as a Neuter Noun.
- (4) Most are Masculă in *ex*:
 Fēmīnīnă, forfex, lex,
 Nex, supellex: Common, pūmex,
 Imbrex, obex, silex, rūmex.
- (5) Masculă appear in *ix*,
 Fornix, phoenix, and cālix.
- (6) Masculă are, fons and mons,
 Chālybs, hūdrops, gryps, and pons,
 Rūdēns, torrens, dens, and cliēns.
 Fractions of the ās, as triēns;
 Add to Masculă trīdēns,
 Occīdēns and ōriēns,
 Bīdēns (*hoe*): but bīdēns (*sheep*)
 With the Fēmīnīnă keep.
- (7) Masculă are found in *es*
 Verrēs and āgīnācēs.

Princ. Rule. III.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar, ur, ūs, ā, ē, c, l, n, t*.

Exc. (1) Mascŭlă are found in *ur*,
Furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, fŭr.

(2) Fēmīnīnă, some in *ūs*
Keep *ū* long, as, servītŭs,
With jŭventŭs, virtŭs, sālŭs,
Sēnectŭs, tellŭs, incŭs, pālŭs.

(3) Also pēctŭs (pēcŭdīs)
Of the Female Gender is.

(4) Mascŭlă are found in *us*
Lēpŭs (lēpōrīs) and mŭs.

(5) Mascŭlă in *l* are mŭgĭl,
Consŭl, sāl and sōl, with pŭgĭl.

(6) Mascŭlă are rēn and splēn,
Pectēn, delphīn, attāgēn.

(7) Fēmīnīnă some in *ōn*;
Gorgōn, sindōn, halečōn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ūs* are Masculine, in *ŭ* Neuter.

Exc. Fēmīnīnă, trees in *ūs*,
With trībŭs, ācŭs, porticŭs,
Dōmŭs, nŭrŭs, sōcrŭs, ānŭs,
Idŭs (idŭum) and mănŭs.*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

Exc. Dīēs in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

* See English of Nouns at p. 94.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of THREE ENDINGS, in *ūs, ā, um, or ēr, ā, um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

	<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>		<i>Neuter</i>	
	like		like mensā		like bellum	
Dominūs .	Bōnūs	bōnā	bōnā	bōnum	good	
Puer . . .	Tēnēr	tēnērā	tēnērā	tēnērūm	tender	
Māgistēr .	Nīgēr	nīgērā	nīgērā	nīgērūm	black	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bōnūs	bōnā	bōnum	Bōnī	bōnāe	bōnā
Voc.	Bōnē	bōnā	bōnum	Bōnī	bōnāe	bōnā
Acc.	Bōnum	bōnām	bōnum	Bōnōs	bōnās	bōnā
Gen.	Bōnī	bōnāe	bōnī	Bōnōrum	bōnārum	bōnōrum
Dat.	Bōnō	bōnāe	bōnō	Bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs
Abl.	Bōnō	bōnā	bōnā	Bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs

	Singular.					
N. V.	Tēnēr, tēnēr-ā, tēnēr-um			Nīgēr, nīgēr-ā, nīgēr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	am	um	Nīgēr-um	am	um
Gen.	Tēnēr-ī	ae	ī	Nīgēr-ī	ae	ī
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	ae	ō	Nīgēr-ō	ae	ō
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	ā	ō	Nīgēr-ō	ā	ō

	Plural.					
N. V.	Tēnēr-ī	ae	ā	Nīgēr-ī	ae	ā
Acc.	Tēnēr-ōs	ās	ā	Nīgēr-ōs	ās	ā
Gen.	Tēnēr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum	Nīgēr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D. Abl.	Tēnēr-is	is	is	Nīgēr-is	is	is

Decline:

as bōnūs:
cārūs, dear
dūbītūs, doubtful
dūrtūs, hard
fēcundūs, fruitful
mālūs, bad
pallidūs, pale.

as tēnēr:
aspēr, rough
lacr, torn
libēr, free
miser, wretched
cornīgēr, horned
frūgīfēr, fruitful.*

as nīgēr:
aegēr, sick
ātēr, jet-black
crēbēr, frequent
pulchēr, beautiful
rūbēr, red
sacr, sa-red.

* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gērō, lērō. Dextēr, at the right hand, propitious, is declined either as tēnēr or nīgēr.

§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: *mēliōr*, *better*; *tristis*, *sad*; *felix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

Singular.					
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	
N. V.	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Tristis	tristē	
Acc.	Mēliōrem	mēliūs	Tristem	tristē	
Gen.	Mēliōris		Tristis		
Dat.	Mēliōri		Tristi		
Abl.	Mēliōrē or i		Tristi		
Plural.					
N. V. A.	Mēliōrēs	mēliōrā	Tristēs	tristiā	
Gen.	Mēliōrum		Tristūm		
D. Abl.	Mēliōribūs.		Tristibūs.		
Singular.					
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	
N. V.	Felix		Ingens		
Acc.	Felicem	felix	Ingentem	ingens	
Gen.	Felicis		Ingentis		
Dat.	Felici		Ingenti		
Abl.	Felici*		Ingenti or ē		
Plural.					
N. V. A.	Felicēs	felicīā	Ingentēs	ingentiā	
Gen.	Felicūm		Ingentūm		
D. Abl.	Felicibūs.		Ingentibūs.		

C. Adjectives in *ae*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: N. *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, *swift*; N. *ācēr*, *ācērīs*, *ācērē*, *keen*.

Singular.					
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	
N. V.	Cēlēr, cēlēr-is, cēlēr-ē		Ācēr, ācēr-is, ācēr-ē		
Acc.	Cēlēr-em	ē	Ācēr-em	ē	
Gen.	Cēlēr-is		Ācēr-is		
D. Abl.	Cēlēr-i		Ācēr-i		
Plural.					
N. V. A.	Cēlēr-ēs	īā	Ācēr-ēs	īā	
Gen.	Cēlēr-ūm		Ācēr-ūm		
D. Abl.	Cēlēr-ibūs		Ācēr-ibūs		

Decline :

as *mēliōr*:
audāciōr, *bolder*
dūriōr, *harder*.

as *felix*:
audax (āc-), *bold*
fērox (ōc-), *haughty*.

as *cēlēr*:
(none).

as *tristis*:
brēvis, *short*
facilis, *easy*.

as *ingens*:
āmans, *loving*
saplens, *wise*.

as *ācēr*:
ālācēr, *drisk*
ēquestēr, *knightly*.

* Rarely ē.

§ 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in *iūs*, and Dat. Sing. in *i*: *ūnūs*, *one*; *āliūs*, *other, another*; *altēr*, *one of two, the other*; *ūtēr*, *which of two*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūnūs	ūnā	ūnum	Ūnī	ūnae	ūnā
Acc.	Ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	Ūnōs	ūnās	ūnā
Gen.	Ūnīūs	ūnīūs	ūnīūs	Ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	Ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	Ūnīs	ūnīs	Ūnīs
Abl.	Ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	Ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Nom.	Āliūs	āliā	āliūd	Āliī	āliae	āliā
Acc.	Ālium	āliam	āliūd	Āliōs	āliās	āliā
Gen.	Āliūs	āliūs	āliūs	Āliōrum	āliārum	āliōrum
Dat.	Āliī	āliī	āliī	Āliīs	āliīs	āliīs
Abl.	Āliō	āliā	āliō	Āliīs	āliīs	āliīs

Singular.

Nom.	Altēr, altēr-ā, altēr-um			Ūtēr, ūtēr-ā, ūtēr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altēr-um	am	um	Ūtēr-um	am	um
Gen.	Altēr-īūs	īūs	īūs	Ūtēr-īūs	īūs	īūs
Dat.	Altēr-ī	ī	ī	Ūtēr-ī	ī	ī
Abl.	Altēr-ō	ā	ō	Ūtēr-ō	ā	ō

Plural.

Nom.	Altēr-			Ūtēr-		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altēr-ōs	ās	ā	Ūtēr-ōs	ās	ā
Gen.	Altēr-ōrum	ārum	ārum	Ūtēr-ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D. Abl.	Altēr-īs	īs	īs	Ūtēr-īs	īs	īs

Decline like *ūnūs*: *ullūs*, *any at all*; *nullūs*, *none, no*; *sōlūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*.

Like *ūtēr*: *neutēr*, *neither*; *ūterquē*, *each (of two)*, *ūtervis*, *ūterlibēt*, *which you will*; *ūtercumquē*, *whichever of the two*. The suffixes *-quē*, *-vis*, *-libēt*, *-cumquē*, are appended to each case-form: *ūtriusquē*, *ūtrivīs*, *utrōlibēt*, *ūtrumcumquē*. *Altērūtēr*, *one or the other*, is usually declined as *ūtēr*. But Gen. *alteriūs-ūtrius* is found.

	Dŭō, <i>two</i> . Plural.				Trēs, <i>three</i> . Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.		M. F.	N.	
Nom.	Dŭō	dŭae	dŭō		Trēs	trīā	
Acc.	Dŭōs or dŭō	dŭās	dŭō		Trīs	trīā	
Gen.	Dŭōrum	dŭārum	dŭōrum		Trīum	trīum	
D. Abl.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs.		Trībŭs	trībŭs.	

Decline as dŭō: ambō, *both*.

The other Cardinal Numbers (*quattuor, four; quinque, five; sex, six; septem, seven; octo, eight; novem, nine; decem, ten, &c.; to centum, a hundred*) are undeclined. *Millē, a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, *mīlīā, thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like *Māriā*. (See Table of Numerals, p. 129.)

COMPARISON.

§ 35. The ADJECTIVE has THREE DEGREES of Comparison; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	dŭrīor, <i>harder</i>	dŭrissimŭs, <i>hardest</i> .

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *īor*.

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimŭs*:

	Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	Gen. dŭr-ī		dŭr-Yōr		dŭr-issimŭs
Brēvis, <i>short</i>	„ brēv-īs		brēv-Yōr		brēv-issimŭs
Audāx, <i>bold</i>	„ audāc-īs		audāc-Yōr		audāc-issimŭs.

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimŭs* to the Nominative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-Yōr	pulchr-rimŭs
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i>	cēlēr-Yōr	cēlēr-rimŭs.

Vētŭs, *ancient*, forms Superl. vēter-rimŭs.

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *is* into *īmŭs*:

Fācilis, <i>easy</i>	Sīmīlis, <i>like</i>	Grācilis, <i>slender</i>
Diffīcilis, <i>difficult</i>	Dissīmīlis, <i>unlike</i>	Hūmilis, <i>lowly</i> .

Superl. fācil-īmŭs, sīmīl-īmŭs, grācil-īmŭs, hūmil-īmŭs, &c.

§ 36. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bōnŭs, <i>good</i>	mēliōr	optīmŭs.
Mālŭs, <i>bad</i>	pējōr	peſsimŭs.
Magnŭs, <i>great</i>	mājōr	maximŭs.
Parvŭs, <i>small</i>	mīnōr	mīnimŭs.
Multŭs, <i>much</i>	(plūs, Neut.)	plūrimŭs.
Nēquam, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimŭs.

Note 1. The Comparative of multŭs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular; but full Plural: Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrē, Gen. plūrium, D. Abl. plūribŭs.

Note 2. Divēs, *rich*, often contracts divit- into dit-: Comp. divitior or ditior, Superl. divitissimŭs or ditissimŭs.

Note 3. Sēnex, *old* (generally *an old man*), has Comp. sēnior.

Jūvenis, *young* (*a youth*, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūnior, Masc. or Fem. But *older* is often nātū mājōr, or mājōr only; *eldest*, nātū maximŭs, or maximŭs; *younger*, nātū mīnōr, or mīnōr; *youngest*, nātū minimŭs, or mīnimŭs.

Note 4. Adjectives of Position spfing from Prepositions:—

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
E, ex, <i>out of</i>	extērŭs, <i>outside</i>	extērior	extrēmŭs (extīmŭs)
Intrā, <i>within</i>	—	intērior	intīmŭs
Sūpēr, <i>above</i>	sūpērŭs, <i>high above</i>	sūpērior	sūprēmŭs (summŭs)
Infrā, <i>below</i>	infrŭs, <i>deep below</i>	infērior	infīmŭs (imŭs)
Prae, <i>before</i>	—	prīor	primŭs, <i>first</i>
Post, <i>after</i>	postērŭs, <i>next after</i>	postērior	postrēmŭs (postūmŭs)
Citrā, <i>on near side</i>	—	citērior	citīmŭs
Ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	—	ultērior	ultīmŭs, <i>last</i>
Prōpē, <i>near</i>	—	prōprior	proxīmŭs
Dē, <i>down from</i>	—	dētērior, <i>worse</i>	dētērrimŭs, <i>worst</i>

Obs. Adjectives in -ŭs after a vowel use in Comparison māgis, maximē; dubiŭs, *doubtful*, māgis dubiŭs, maximē dubiŭs.

Adjectives in -diciŭs, -ficiŭs, -viliŭs change ŭs into -entior, entissimŭs; magnificiŭs, magnificentior, magnificentissimŭs.

Oclor, *swifter*, ocissimŭs, has no Positive.

Many Adjectives have Positive only: some Comparative without Superlative, many Superlative without Comparative.

§ 37. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives 'imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative ŭs, Superlative ē.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj. Dignŭs, <i>worthy</i>	dignŭs	dignior	dignissimŭs.
Adv. Dignē, <i>worthily</i>	dignē	dignius	dignissimē.
Adj. Gravis, <i>weighty</i>	gravis	gravior	gravissimŭs.
Adv. Gravitōr, <i>weightily</i>	gravitōr	gravius	gravissimē.
a. So:	Saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē.
	Diū, <i>long</i>	diutius	diutissimē.
But:	Multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plurimum.
	Magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	māgis, <i>more</i>	maximē.

PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantives; the rest are generally Adjectives, but are often used Substantively,

(1) PERSONAL.

1. FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Ēgō , <i>I</i>	Nōs , <i>we</i>
Acc.	Mē , <i>me</i>	Nōs , <i>us</i>
Gen.	Mēi , <i>of me</i>	Nostrī , or Nostrum , <i>of us</i>
Dat.	Mihī , <i>to or for me</i>	Nōbis , <i>to or for us</i>
Abl.	Mē , <i>(with) me</i>	Nōbis , <i>(with) us.</i>

2. SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	Tū , <i>thou</i>	Vōs , <i>ye</i>
Acc.	Tē , <i>thee</i>	Vōs , <i>you</i>
Gen.	Tui , <i>of thee</i>	Vestri , or Vestrum , <i>of you</i>
Dat.	Tibi , <i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbis , <i>to or for you</i>
Abl.	Tē , <i>(with) thee</i>	Vōbis , <i>(with) you.</i>

(2) REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON).

Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(wanting.)
Acc.	Sē (sēsē), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Gen.	Sui , <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Dat.	Sibi , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Abl.	Sē (sēsē), <i>(with) himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>

(3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bōnūs, decline :

Mēūs, mēū, mēum, *my, mine.*

Tūūs, tūū, tūum, *thy, thine.*

Sūūs, sūū, sūum, *his, her, its, their own.*

Cūjūs, cūjū, cūjum, *whose; whose?*

As Nīgēr:

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrum, *our.*

Vestēr, vestrā, vestrum, *your.*

Note. Mēūs has Vocative Masculine **hū**. Tūūs, sūūs, have none.

(4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

1. SIMPLE OR UNEMPHATIC.

Īs, that (or he, she, it).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Īs	ěā	Yd	Īī (Īī)	ěae	ěā
Acc.	Ēum	ěam	Yd	Ēōs	ěās	ěā
Gen.	Ējūs	ějūs	ějūs	Ēōrum	ěārum	ěōrum
Dat.	Īī	ěī	ěī		Īīs or Īīs	
Abl.	Ēō	ěā	ěō		Īīs or Īīs	

2. EMPHATIC.

Hīc, this (near me).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Hīc	haec	hōc	Hī	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	Hūjūs	hūjūs	hūjūs	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	Hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs	hīs	hīs

Illē, that (yonder).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Illē	illā	illū	Illī	illae	illā
Acc.	Illum	illam	illū	Illōs	illās	illā
Gen.	Illūs	illūs	illūs	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī	illī	illī	Illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs	illīs	illīs

Istē, that (near you), is declined like Illē.

(5) DEFINITIVE. (*Īdem, same; ipsē, self.*)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Īdem	ěādem	Ydem	Īidem*	ěaedem	ěādem
Acc.	Ēundem	ěandem	Ydem	Ēosdem	ěasdem	ěādem
Gen.	Ējusdem	ějusedem	ějusedem	Ēōrundem	ěārundem	ěōrundem
Dat.	Īidem	ěidem	ěidem		Īidem or Īidem*	
Abl.	Ēōdem	ěādem	ěōdem		Īidem or Īidem.*	

Ipsē is declined like *Illē*, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. *ipsum*. It forms a Superlative *ipsissimū*, *very self*.

* Poets write Nom. Plur. *my* so. *Idēm*, Dat. Abl. *idem*.

(6) RELATIVE. (Qui, who, or which.)

	Singular.				Plural.		
Nom.	Qui	quae	quod	Qui	quae	quae	
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	Quos	quas	quae	
Gen.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	Quorum	quarum	quorum	
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	Quibus or quibus			
Abl.	Quo	qua	quo	Quibus or quibus.			

(7) INTERROGATIVE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	Quis (quis)	quid	} <i>who, or</i>
	Qui	quae quod	
Acc.	Quem	quam quid	
	Quem	quam quod	
	&c.	&c. &c.	

(8) INDEFINITE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	Quis	quid	quid
	Qui	quae	quod
Acc.	Quem	quam	quid
	Quem	quam	quod
	&c.	&c.	&c.

In the other forms as Relative.

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. Qui, quae, quid or quae.

(9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. Quisnam, quidnam; quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, *who, what?*
2. Ecquis (for en-quis), ecquā, ecquid? Ecqui, ecquae, ecquod, *anyone?* (Interrogative). So Numquis, siquis, &c.
3. Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid; Aliqui, aliquā, aliquod, *some one.*
4. Quispiam, quaequam, quippiam (quodpiam), *anyone.*
5. Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cuiusquam, &c., *anyone at all.*
6. Quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one.*
7. Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whosoever, whatsoever.*
8. Quisquis, *whosoever*, quidquid, *whatsoever.*
9. Quivis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), *any you will.*
10. Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet), *any you please.*
11. Quisque, quaeque, quicque; Quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each.* So Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque (-quodque), *each one.*

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. cuiusquam, aliquis, cuiuscumque, &c., &c. On Correlatives, see p. 126.

THE PRONOMINAL CORRELATIVES QUALIS, &c.

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Indefinite.	Univ.
Qualis, <i>of what kind?</i>	talis, <i>such</i>	qualis, <i>as</i>		qualiscumque, <i>of what kind soever.</i>
Quantus, <i>how great?</i>	tantus, <i>so great</i>	quantus, <i>as</i>	aliquantus, <i>of some size</i>	quantuscumque, <i>how great soever.</i>
Quot, <i>how many?</i>	tot, <i>so many</i>	quot, <i>as</i>	aliquot, <i>some few</i>	quotcumque, <i>how many soever.</i>

* The forms Quis, quid, are Substantival; Qui, quod, Adjectival.

VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two VOICES. (1) the ACTIVE VOICE; *ămō, I love*: (2) the PASSIVE; *ămōr, I am loved*.

§ 40. A DEPONENT Verb is chiefly PASSIVE in form, but ACTIVE in sense; *hortōr, I exhort*.

§ 41. Active and Dependent Verbs are either—

- (1) TRANSITIVE, acting on an object: *ămō ăm, I love him*: or
- (2) INTRANSITIVE, not acting on an object: *stō, I stand*.

Obs. Verbs Intransitive have no personal PASSIVE: see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts:

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has three MOODS.

- (1) The INDICATIVE; *ămō, I love*.
- (2) The CONJUNCTIVE; *ămem* (variously rendered: see § 66).
- (3) The IMPERATIVE; *ămā, love thou*.

§ 43. Time is expressed by TENSES.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb FINITE: the PRESENT, SIMPLE-FUTURE, IMPERFECT, PERFECT, FUTURE-PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT. Other Tenses are formed by the verb *Sum, esse* (to be), with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and (2) three PERSONS in each Number.

The First Person speaks: *ămō, I love*; *ămāmūs, we love*.

The Second Person is spoken to: *ămās, thou lovest*; *ămātīs, ye love*.

The Third Person is spoken of: *ămāt, he loves*; *ămant, they love*.

Obs. The Pronouns, *эгō, нōs, тū, вѣs, љs, љ*, are severally implied in the PERSONAL Endings.

§ 45. II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verb-nouns.

- (1) The INFINITIVE, having several Tense-forms.
- (2) The GERUND, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Cases
- (3) The two SUPINES, } to the Infinitive.
- (4) PARTICIPLES, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in *дūs*, and is called GERUNDIVE.

§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

ACTIVE VERBS.

		Ind. Pres.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	
1st CONJ.	A -verbs	Āmō	āmā	āmā-rē	<i>love</i>
2nd CONJ.	M -verbs	Mōnēō	mōnē	mōnē-rē	<i>advise</i>
3rd CONJ.	Cons. -verbs	Rēgō	rēg-ē	rēg-ērē	<i>rule</i>
	U -verbs	Indūō	indū-ē	indū-ērē	<i>put on</i>
4th CONJ.	I -verbs	Audīō	audī	audī-rē	<i>hear.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

1st CONJ.	A -verbs	Vēnōr	vēnā-rē	vēnā-rī	<i>hunt</i>
2nd CONJ.	M -verbs	Vērōr	vērē-rē	vērē-rī	<i>fear</i>
3rd CONJ.	Cons. -verbs	Ūtōr	ūt-ērē	ūt-ī	<i>use</i>
4th CONJ.	I -verbs	Partiōr	partī-rē	partī-rī	<i>divide.</i>

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb:

ACTIVE VERBS.

Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
1. Ām A -	ām ēV -	āmā T -
2. Mōn M -	mōn U -	mōnī T -
3. Rēg G -	rex- (reg S -)	rec T -
4. Aud I -	audī V -	audī T -

DEPONENT VERBS.

Pres. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
Vēn A -	vēnā T -
Vēr M -	vērī T -
Ū T -	ūt S -
Part I -	partī T -

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

From PRESENT Stem.	From PERFECT Stem.	From SUPINE Stem.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Infin. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus :

SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audiō
Infinitive Pres.	āmā-rē	mōnē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāv-i	mōnū-i	rex-i	audiv-i
Supine in <i>um</i>	āmāt-um.	mōnīt-um.	rect-um.	audit-um.

SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmōr	Mōnēōr	Rēgōr	Audiōr
Infinitive Pres.	āmā-rī	mōnē-rī	rēg-i	audi-rī
Participle Perf.	āmāt-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	rect-ūs	audit-ūs
Gerundive	āmāndūs.	mōnendūs.	rēgendūs.	audiendūs.

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated :

LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audiō
2 Pers. Pres.	āmās	mōnēs	rēgis	audīs
Infinitive Pres.	āmā-rē	mōnē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāvī	mōnūī	rexī	audivī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	āmāndum	mōnendum	rēgendum*	audiendum
„ <i>di</i>	āmāndī	mōnendī	rēgendī	audiendī
„ <i>do</i>	āmāndō	mōnendō	rēgendō	audiendō
Sup. in <i>um</i>	āmātum	mōnitum	rectum	auditum
„ <i>u</i>	āmātū	mōnitū	rectū	auditū
Part. Pres.	āmans	mōnens	rēgens	audiens
„ Fut.	āmātūrūs.	mōnītūrūs.	rectūrūs.	auditūrūs.

LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Vēnōr	Vērēōr	Ūtōr	Partiōr
2 Pers. Pres.	vēnāris	vērēris	ūtēris	partiāris
Infinitive Pres.	vēnārī	vērērī	ūtī	partiārī
Perfect	vēnātūs sum	vērītūs sum	ūsūs sum	partītūs sum
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	vēnandum	vērendum	ūtendum	partiendum
„ <i>di</i>	vēnandī	vērēndī	ūtēndī	partiēndī
„ <i>do</i>	vēnandō	vērēndō	ūtēndō	partiēndō
Gerundive	vēnandūs	vērēndūs	ūtēndūs	partiēndūs
Sup. in <i>um</i>	vēnātum	vērītum	ūsūm	partitum
„ <i>u</i>	vēnātū	vērītū	ūsū	partitū
Part. Pres.	vēnans	vērēns	ūtēns	partiēns
„ Perf.	vēnātūs	vērītūs	ūsūs	partītūs
„ Fut.	vēnātūrūs.	vērītūrūs.	ūsūrūs.	partītūrūs.

* The forms *-undum -undūs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive Active, and no Supine in *u*.

§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) compares the expression of the relations of Time in Latin and English.

	Time.	Indic.	English.	Name of Tense.
Present.	(Simple	āmō	<i>I love</i>	Present.
	Pres. Relation	āmō	<i>am loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāvi	<i>have loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrus sum	<i>am about to love</i>	
Past.	(Simple	āmāvi	<i>loved</i>	Futūrum Pēriphrasticum Præsentis. Perfect. Imperfect. Pluperfect. Futūrum Pēriphrasticum Præteritī. Future Simple.
	Pres. Relation	āmābam	<i>was loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāveram	<i>had loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrus fūi.	<i>was about to love</i>	
Future.	(Simple	āmābō	<i>shall love</i>	Future Perfect. Futūrum Pēriphrasticum Futūri.
	Pres. Relation	āmābō	<i>shall be loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāverō	<i>shall have loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrus ērō	<i>shall be about to love</i>	

Note 1. The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (āmāvi, *I have loved*) are called Primary Tenses: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (āmāvi, *I loved*) Historic Tenses.

Note 2. A. The Perfect is formed in several ways:—

1. By adding **vi** to the Stem: āmāvi, fiēvi.

2. By adding **tūi** (for vi) to the Stem or Clipt Stem: * cōlūi, mōnūi.

3. By adding **si** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: carpsi, mansi.

In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see § 81).

4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem.

This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: cūcurri, mōmordi; or the first Consonant with **ē**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: cēcēni (from cānō); see § 81; § 111 (9).

5. By adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: bibi, veni, pxi (from āgō), fāvi (from fāvēō).

B. The Supine is formed:—

1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **i-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: āmātum, cultum, rectum, mōn-i-tum.

2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See § 81.

Note 3. The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, sum, esse, which helps to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its vowel Character: mon- for mone-.

§ 50. FORMATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB SUM, *I am* (Sum, fui, esse, futurū).
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. Sum, <i>I am</i> ēs, <i>thou art</i> est, <i>he is</i> Pl. sumūs, <i>we are</i> estis, <i>ye are</i> sunt, <i>they are</i>.	sim, <i>I may</i> sis, <i>thou mayst</i> sit, <i>he may</i> simūs, <i>we may</i> sitis, <i>ye may</i> sint, <i>they may</i> } <i>be.</i>	ēs, <i>be thou</i> estē, <i>be ye.</i>
Imperfect.	S. ērō, <i>I shall</i> ēris, <i>thou wilt</i> erit, <i>he will</i> Pl. erimūs, <i>we shall</i> eritis, <i>ye will</i> erunt, <i>they will</i> } <i>be</i>	essem <i>vel</i> forem, <i>I might</i> essēs v. forēs, <i>thou mightst</i> essēt v. forēt, <i>he might</i> essēmūs v. foremūs, <i>we might</i> essētis v. forētis, <i>ye might</i> essent v. forent, <i>they might</i> } <i>be.</i>	estō, <i>thou must be</i> estō, <i>he must be</i> estōtē, <i>ye must be</i> suntō, <i>they must be.</i>

	Perfect.	Future Perfect.	Pluperfect.
<i>S. fūi, I was *</i> <i>fūisti, thou wast</i> <i>fuit, he was</i> <i>Pl. fūimūs, we were</i> <i>fūistis, ye were</i> <i>fuerunt vel fuērē, they were</i>	<i>S. fuērō, I shall</i> <i>fuēris, thou wilt</i> <i>fuērit, he will</i> <i>Pl. fuērīmūs, we shall</i> <i>fuēritis, ye will</i> <i>fuērint, they will</i>	<i>S. fuēram, I had</i> <i>fuērās, thou hadst</i> <i>fuērāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. fuērāmūs, we had</i> <i>fuērātis, ye had</i> <i>fuērānt, they had</i>	<i>fūerim, I may</i> <i>fūeris, thou mayst</i> <i>fuerit, he may</i> <i>fūerimūs, we may</i> <i>fūeritis, ye may</i> <i>fuerint, they may</i> <i>have been.</i>
VERB INFINITE. Infinitive Present and Imperfect. <i>essē, to be.</i> Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect. <i>fuisse, to have been.</i> Infinitive Future. <i>fore v. futūrus essē, to be about to be.</i> Gerunds. <i>None.</i> Supines. <i>None.</i> Participle Present. <i>None.</i> Participle Future. <i>futūrus, about to be.</i> Futūrus may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum : see § 64.	<i>fuissem, I should</i> <i>fuissec, thou wouldst</i> <i>fuisset, he would</i> <i>fuissemūs, we should</i> <i>fuissetis, ye would</i> <i>fuisissent, they would</i> <i>have been.</i>	<i>fuissem, I should</i> <i>fuissec, thou wouldst</i> <i>fuisset, he would</i> <i>fuissemūs, we should</i> <i>fuissetis, ye would</i> <i>fuisissent, they would</i> <i>have been.</i>	<i>fuissem, I should</i> <i>fuissec, thou wouldst</i> <i>fuisset, he would</i> <i>fuissemūs, we should</i> <i>fuissetis, ye would</i> <i>fuisissent, they would</i> <i>have been.</i>

Like Sum decline its compounds absum, adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prosum, subsum, supersum. Prosum takes *d* before *e*, as, Prosum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumūs, prōdestis, prōsunt. Absum has Pres. Part. abeans ; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

* Or, fui, &c. I have been, thou hast been, he has been, we, ye, they (have been).

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. <i>Āmānō, I love</i> <i>āmās, thou lovest</i> <i>āmāt, he loves</i> Pl. <i>āmāmūs, we love</i> <i>āmātīs, ye love</i> <i>āmānt, they love.</i>	<i>āmēm, I may</i> <i>āmēs, thou mayst</i> <i>āmēt, he may</i> <i>āmēmūs, we may</i> <i>āmētīs, ye may</i> <i>āmēnt, they may.</i>	<i>āmā, love thou</i> <i>āmālē, love ye.</i>
Imperfect.	S. <i>āmābō, I shall</i> <i>āmābīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmābīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmābīmūs, we shall</i> <i>āmābītīs, ye will</i> <i>āmābunt, they will</i>	<i>āmārem, I might</i> <i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i> <i>āmārēt, he might</i> <i>āmārēmūs, we might</i> <i>āmārētīs, ye might</i> <i>āmārent, they might</i>	<i>āmātō, thou</i> <i>āmātō, he</i> <i>āmātōtē, ye</i> <i>āmātō, they</i> <i>must love.</i>

Perfect.	S. <i>Āmāvi, I loved*</i> <i>āmāvistī, thou lovedst</i> <i>āmāvit, he loved</i> Pl. <i>āmāvimūs, we loved</i> <i>āmāvistis, ye loved</i> <i>āmāv-ērunt v. āmāv-ērē,</i> <i>they loved.</i>	āmāvērim, <i>I may</i> <i>āmāvērīs, thou mayst</i> <i>āmāvērīt, he may</i> <i>āmāvērimūs, we may</i> <i>āmāvērītis, ye may</i> <i>āmāvērint, they may</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmāre, to love.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmāvišē, to have loved.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrī's ešē, to be about to love.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>āmandum, loving.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>āmandī, of loving.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>āmandō, for or by loving.</i> Sup. in <i>um.</i> . <i>āmātum, to love.</i> Sup. in <i>u.</i> . . <i>āmātū, in loving, or to be loved.</i> Part. Pres. . . <i>āmans, loving.</i> Part. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs, about to love.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>āmāvērō, I shall</i> <i>āmāvērīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmāvērīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmāvēiīmūs, we shall</i> <i>āmāvērītīs, ye will</i> <i>āmāvērint, they will</i>	āmāvišē, <i>I should</i> <i>āmāvišēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>āmāvišēt, he would</i> <i>āmāvišēimūs, we should</i> <i>āmāvišētīs, ye would</i> <i>āmāvišēint, they would</i>	
Pluperfect.	S. <i>āmāvēram, I had</i> <i>āmāvērās, thou hadst</i> <i>āmāvērāt, he had</i> Pl. <i>āmāvērāmūs, we had</i> <i>āmāvērātīs, ye had</i> <i>āmāvērānt, they had</i>	āmāvērēt, <i>I have</i> <i>āmāvērētīs, thou hast</i> <i>āmāvērēt, he has</i> <i>āmāvērētīmūs, we have</i> <i>āmāvērētīs, ye have</i> <i>āmāvērēt, they have</i>	

* Or, *āmāvi, &c., I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved, we, ye, they (have loved).*

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<i>S.</i> mōnēō, <i>I advise</i> mōnēs, <i>thou advisest</i> mōnēt, <i>he advises</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnēmūs, <i>we advise</i> mōnētis, <i>ye advise</i> • mōnent, <i>they advise.</i> <i>S.</i> mōnēbō, <i>I shall</i> mōnēbīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnēbīt, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnēbīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnēbītis, <i>ye will</i> pōnēbunt, <i>they will</i>	mōnēam, <i>I may</i> mōnēās, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnēāt, <i>he may</i> mōnēāmūs, <i>we may</i> mōnēātis, <i>ye may</i> mōnēant, <i>they may</i>	mōnē, <i>advise thou</i> mōnētē, <i>advise ye.</i> mōnētō, <i>thou</i> mōnētō, <i>he</i> mōnētōtē, <i>ye</i> mōnentō, <i>they</i> <i>must advise.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>S.</i> mōnēbam, <i>I was</i> mōnēbās, <i>thou wast</i> mōnēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> mōnēbātis, <i>ye were</i> mōnēbant, <i>they were</i>	mōnērem, <i>I might</i> mōnērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> mōnērēt, <i>he might</i> mōnērēmūs, <i>we might</i> mōnērētis, <i>ye might</i> mōnērent, <i>they might</i>	

● Perfect.	S. mōnūi, <i>I advised</i> * mōnūistī, <i>thou advisedst</i> - mōnūit, <i>he advised</i> Pl. mōnūimūs, <i>we advised</i> mōnūistīs, <i>ye advised</i> mōnū-ērunt v. mōnū-ērē, <i>they advised.</i>	mōnūērim, <i>I may</i> mōnūērīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnūērīt, <i>he may</i> mōnūērīmūs, <i>we may</i> mōnūērītīs, <i>ye may</i> mōnūērīnt, <i>they may</i>	VERB INFINITE. Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērē, <i>to advise.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnūissē, <i>to have advised.</i> Inf. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i>
● Future Perfect.	S. mōnūērō, <i>I shall</i> mōnūērīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnūērīt, <i>he will</i> Pl. mōnūērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnūērītūs, <i>ye will</i> mōnūērīnt, <i>they will</i>		Ger. Nom. Ac. mōnendum, <i>advising.</i> Ger. Gen. . . mōnendī, <i>of advising.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. mōnendō, <i>for or by advising.</i>
Pluperfect.	S. mōnūeram, <i>I had</i> mōnūerās, <i>thou hadst</i> mōnūerāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. mōnūerāmūs, <i>we had</i> mōnūerātīs, <i>ye had</i> mōnūerānt, <i>they had</i>	mōnūissem, <i>I should</i> mōnūissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mōnūissēt, <i>he would</i> mōnūissēmūs, <i>we should</i> mōnūissētīs, <i>ye would</i> mōnūissēnt, <i>they would</i>	Sup. in um . mōnītum, <i>to advise.</i> Sup. in u . . mōnītū, <i>in advising or to be advised.</i> Part. Pres. . . mōnens, <i>advising.</i> Part. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs, <i>about to advise.</i>

* Or, mōnūi, &c., *I have advised, thou hast advised, he has advised, we, ye, they (have advised).*

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple	S. <i>rĕgō, I rule</i> <i>rĕgēs, thou rulest</i> <i>rĕgēt, he rules</i> Pl. <i>rĕgimūs, we rule</i> <i>rĕgītis, ye rule</i> <i>rĕgunt, they rule.</i>	<i>rĕgam, I may</i> <i>rĕgās, thou mayst</i> <i>rĕgāt, he may</i> <i>rĕgamūs, we may</i> <i>rĕgātis, ye may</i> <i>rĕgant, they may</i> } rule.	<i>rĕgē, rule thou *</i> <i>rĕgētē, rule ye.</i>
Imperfect	S. <i>rĕgēbam, I was</i> <i>rĕgēbās, thou wast</i> <i>rĕgēbāt, he was</i> Pl. <i>rĕgēbāmūs, we were</i> <i>rĕgēbātis, ye were</i> <i>rĕgēbant, they were</i> } ruling.	<i>rĕgērem, I might</i> <i>rĕgērēs, thou mightst</i> <i>rĕgērēt, he might</i> <i>rĕgērēmūs, we might</i> <i>rĕgērētis, ye might</i> <i>rĕgērēnt, they might</i> } rule.	<i>rĕgītō, thou</i> <i>rĕgītō, he</i> <i>rĕgītōtē, ye</i> <i>rĕguntō, they</i> } must rule.

Perfect.	S. <i>rēxī, I ruled†</i> <i>rēxistī, thou ruledst</i> <i>rēxīt, he ruled</i> <i>Pl. rēxīmūs, we ruled</i> <i>rēxistis, ye ruled</i> <i>rēx-erunt vel rex-erē, they ruled.</i>	<i>rēxērim, I may have ruled.</i> <i>rēxērīs, thou mayst have ruled.</i> <i>rēxērīt, he may have ruled.</i> <i>rēxērīmūs, we may have ruled.</i> <i>rēxērītis, ye may have ruled.</i> <i>rēxērint, they may have ruled.</i>	• VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>rēgērē, to rule.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>rēxissē, to have ruled.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>rectūrus essē, to be about to rule.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>rēxērō, I shall</i> <i>rēxērīs, thou wilt</i> <i>rēxērīt, he will</i> <i>Pl. rēxērīmūs, we shall</i> <i>rēxērītis, ye will</i> <i>rēxērint, they will</i>	•	Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>rēgendum, ruling.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>rēgendī, of ruling.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>rēgendō, for or by ruling.</i>
Pluperfect.	S. <i>rēxeram, I had</i> <i>rēxerās, thou hadst</i> <i>rēxerāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. rēxerāmūs, we had</i> <i>rēxerātis, ye had</i> <i>rēxerant, they had</i>	<i>rēxissem, I should have ruled.</i> <i>rēxissēs, thou wouldst have ruled.</i> <i>rēxissēt, he would have ruled.</i> <i>rēxissēmūs, we should have ruled.</i> <i>rēxissētis, ye would have ruled.</i> <i>rēxissem, they would have ruled.</i>	Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>rectum, to rule.</i> Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>rectū, in ruling, or to be ruled.</i> Part. Pres. . <i>rēgens, ruling.</i> Part. Fut. . <i>rectūrus, about to rule.</i>

* Fācō, dūcō, *make Imperative Present Second Person, fāc or fācē, dūc, dūc.*
† Or, *rēxi, &c., I have ruled, thou hast ruled, he has ruled, we, ye, they (have ruled).*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
•	<i>S.</i> audīō, <i>I hear</i> <i>audīs, thou hearest</i> <i>audīt, he hears</i> <i>Pl.</i> audimūs, <i>we hear</i> <i>audītis, ye hear</i> <i>audīunt, they hear.</i>	<i>audiam, I may</i> <i>audias, thou mayst</i> <i>audiāt, he may</i> <i>audiamūs, we may</i> <i>audiātis, ye may</i> <i>audiant, they may</i> <i>hear.</i>	<i>audī, hear thou</i> <i>audite, hear ye.</i>
•	<i>S.</i> audiam, <i>I shall</i> <i>audies, thou wilt</i> <i>audiēt, he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> audiemūs, <i>we shall</i> <i>audiētis, ye will</i> <i>audient, they will</i> <i>hear.</i>		<i>audītō, thou</i> <i>audītō, he</i> <i>audītōtē, ye</i> <i>audiantō, they</i> <i>must hear.</i>
•	<i>S.</i> audiebam, <i>I was</i> <i>audiebās, thou wast</i> <i>audiebāt, he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> audiebāmūs, <i>we were</i> <i>audiebātis, ye were</i> <i>audiebant, they were</i> <i>hearing.</i>	<i>audirem, I might</i> <i>audirēs, thou mightst</i> <i>audirēt, he might</i> <i>audirēmūs, we might</i> <i>audirētis, ye might</i> <i>audirent, they might</i> <i>hear.</i>	

Perfect.	S. <i>audīvī, I heard</i> <i>audivisti, thou heardest</i> <i>audivit, he heard</i> Pl. <i>audivimūs, we heard</i> <i>audivistis, ye heard</i> <i>audiv-ērunt v. audiv-ērē, they heard.</i>	audivērim, <i>I may</i> <i>audivēris, thou mayst</i> <i>audivērit, he may</i> <i>audivērimūs, we may</i> <i>audivēritīs, ye may</i> <i>audivērint, they may</i>	• VERB INFINITE. • Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>audirē, to hear.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>audivissē, to have heard.</i> Inf. Fut. . . <i>auditūrys essē, to be about to hear.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>audivērō, I shall</i> <i>audivēris, thou wilt</i> <i>audivērit, he will</i> Pl. <i>audivērimūs, we shall</i> <i>audivēritīs, ye will</i> <i>audivērint, they will</i>	•	Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>audiendum, hearing.</i> Ger. Gen. . . <i>audiendi, of hearing.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>audiendō, for or by hearing.</i>
Pluperfect.	S. <i>audivēram, I had</i> <i>audivērās, thou hadst</i> <i>audivērāt, he had</i> Pl. <i>audivērāmūs, we had</i> <i>audivērātīs, ye had</i> <i>audivērānt, they had</i>	<i>audivissem, I should</i> <i>audivissēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>audivissēt, he would</i> <i>audivissēmūs, we should</i> <i>audivissētīs, ye would</i> <i>audivissent, they would</i>	Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>auditum, to hear.</i> Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>auditū, in hearing, or to be heard.</i> Part. Pres. . . <i>audiens, hearing.</i> Part. Fut. . . <i>auditūrus, about to hear.</i>

* Or, *audivī, &c., I have heard, thou hast heard, he has heard, we, ye, they (have heard).*

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. <i>Amor, I am</i> <i>ămă-ris vël -rě, thou art</i> <i>ămătűr, he is</i> Pl. <i>ămăműr, we are</i> <i>ămămînî, ye are</i> <i>ămăntűr, they are</i>	} <i>loved.</i> <i>ămăr, I may</i> <i>ămă-ris vël -rě, thou mayst</i> <i>ămătűr, he may</i> <i>ămēműr, we may</i> <i>ămēmînî, ye may</i> <i>ămენტűr, they may</i>	} <i>be loved.</i> <i>ămăr, I might</i> <i>ămă-ris vël -rě, thou mightest</i> <i>ămărětűr, he might</i> <i>ămărēműr, we might</i> <i>ămărēmînî, ye might</i> <i>ămărentűr, they might</i>	} <i>loved.</i> <i>ămărě, be thou</i> <i>ămămînî, be ye</i>
Future Simple.	S. <i>ămăbър, I shall</i> <i>ămăbě-ris vël -rě, thou wilt</i> <i>ămăbītűr, he will</i> Pl. <i>ămăcēműr, we shall</i> <i>ămăbīmînî, ye will</i> <i>ămăbuntűr, they will</i>	} <i>be loved.</i>	} <i>must be loved.</i> <i>ămăтър, thou</i> <i>ămăтър, he</i> <i>ămăнтър, they</i>
Imperfect	S. <i>ămăbър, I was</i> <i>ămăbă-ris vël -rě, thou wast</i> <i>ămăbătűr, he was</i> Pl. <i>ămăbăműr, we were</i> <i>ămăbămînî, ye were</i> <i>ămăbantűr, they were</i>	} <i>being loved.</i>	

VERB INFINITIVE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. *āmāri, to be loved.**Inf. Perf. Plup. *āmātūs essē, to have been loved.*Inf. Fut. . . *āmātum iri..*Part. Perf. . . *āmātūs, loved.*Gerundive . . *āmandūs, meet to be loved.*

The ancient ending of Infinitive
 Present Passive was *ēr*: as, *āmāriēr*;
 and this form is sometimes used by poets.

Present Perfect.	S. <i>āmātūs sum, I was</i> <i>āmātūs es, thou wast</i> <i>āmātūs est, he was</i> <i>āmātī sūmūs, we were</i> <i>āmātī estīs, ye were</i> <i>āmātī sunt, they were</i> Pl. <i>āmātī sūmūs, we were</i> <i>āmātī estīs, ye were</i> <i>āmātī sunt, they were</i>	<i>have been loved.</i> <i>āmātūs sim, I may</i> <i>āmātūs sis, thou mayst</i> <i>āmātūs sit, he may</i> <i>āmātī sīmūs, we may</i> <i>āmātī sitīs, ye may</i> <i>āmātī sint, they may</i>
Future Perfect.	S. <i>āmātūs ērō, I shall</i> <i>āmātūs ēris, thou wilt</i> <i>āmātūs ērit, he will</i> <i>āmātī ērimūs, we shall</i> <i>āmātī ēritīs, ye will</i> <i>āmātī ērunt, they will</i> Pl. <i>āmātī ērimūs, we shall</i> <i>āmātī ēritīs, ye will</i> <i>āmātī ērunt, they will</i>	<i>have been loved.</i> <i>āmātūs essem, I should</i> <i>āmātūs essēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>āmātūs essēt, he would</i> <i>āmātī essēmūs, we should</i> <i>āmātī essētīs, ye would</i> <i>āmātī essent, they would</i>
Pluperfect.	S. <i>āmātūs eram, I had</i> <i>āmātūs erās, thou hadst</i> <i>āmātūs erāt, he had</i> <i>āmātī eramūs, we had</i> <i>āmātī erātīs, ye had</i> <i>āmātī erant, they had</i> Pl. <i>āmātī eramūs, we had</i> <i>āmātī erātīs, ye had</i> <i>āmātī erant, they had</i>	<i>been loved.</i> <i>āmātūs essem, I should</i> <i>āmātūs essēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>āmātūs essēt, he would</i> <i>āmātī essēmūs, we should</i> <i>āmātī essētīs, ye would</i> <i>āmātī essent, they would</i>

* Or, *āmātūs sum, &c., I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been loved).*

§ 56. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S.	<i>Mönēōr, I am</i> <i>mōnē-ris v. -rē, thou art</i> <i>mōnētūr, he is</i> <i>Pl. mōnēmūr, we are</i> <i>mōnēmīnī, ye are</i> <i>mōnentūr, they are</i>	<i>mōnēār, I may</i> <i>mōnēā-ris v. -rē, thou mayst</i> <i>mōnēātūr, he may</i> <i>mōnēāmūr, we may</i> <i>mōnēāmīnī, ye may</i> <i>mōnēāntūr, they may</i>	<i>mōnērē, be thou</i> <i>mōnēmīnī, be ye</i>
Future Simple?	<i>S. mōnēbōr, I shall</i> <i>mōnēbē-ris v. -rē, thou wilt</i> <i>mōnēbītūr, he will</i> <i>Pl. mōnēbīmūr, we shall</i> <i>mōnēbīmīnī, ye will</i> <i>mōnēbuntūr, they will</i>		<i>mōnētōr, thou</i> <i>mōnētōr, he</i> <i>mōnentōr, they</i>
Imperfect?	<i>S. mōnēbār, I was</i> <i>mōnēbā-ris v. -rē, thou wast</i> <i>mōnēbātūr, he was</i> <i>Pl. mōnēbāmūr, we were</i> <i>mōnēbāmīnī, ye were</i> <i>mōnēbantūr, they were</i>	<i>mōnērēr, I might</i> <i>mōnērē-ris v. -rē, thou mightst</i> <i>mōnērētūr, he might</i> <i>mōnērēmūr, we might</i> <i>mōnērēmīnī, ye might</i> <i>mōnērēntūr, they might</i>	

Perfect.	<i>S.</i> mōnītūs sum, <i>I was</i> mōnītūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i> mōnītūs est, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnītī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> mōnītī estīs, <i>ye were</i> mōnītī sunt, <i>they were</i> <i>S.</i> mōnītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> mōnītūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnītūs ērit, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnītī ērimūs, <i>we</i> <i>shall</i> mōnītī ēritīs, <i>ye will</i> mōnītī ērunt, <i>they will</i> <i>S.</i> mōnītūs eram, <i>I had</i> mōnītūs ēras, <i>thou hadst</i> mōnītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnītī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mōnītī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> mōnītī ērant, <i>they had</i>	<i>S.</i> mōnītūs sim, <i>I may</i> mōnītūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnītūs sīt, <i>he may</i> mōnītī simūs, <i>we may</i> mōnītī sitīs, <i>ye may</i> mōnītī sint, <i>they may</i>	<i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S.</i> mōnītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> mōnītūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnītūs ērit, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnītī ērimūs, <i>we</i> <i>shall</i> mōnītī ēritīs, <i>ye will</i> mōnītī ērunt, <i>they will</i>	<i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>	<i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>
Pluperfect.	<i>S.</i> mōnītūs eram, <i>I had</i> mōnītūs ēras, <i>thou hadst</i> mōnītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> mōnītī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mōnītī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> mōnītī ērant, <i>they had</i>	<i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>	<i>have been</i> <i>advised.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnēri, *to be advised.*Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnītūs essē, *to have been advised.*

Inf. Fut. . . mōnītum iri.

Part. Perf. . mōnītūs, *advised.*Gerundive . mōnendūs, *meet to be advised.** Or, mōnītūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been advised).*

§ 57. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. Rēgōr, <i>I am</i> rēgē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou art</i> rēgītūr, <i>he is</i> Pl. rēgimūr, <i>we are</i> rēgiminī, <i>ye are</i> rēguntūr, <i>they are</i>	rēgār, <i>I may</i> rēgā-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i> rēgātūr, <i>he may</i> rēgāmūr, <i>we may</i> rēgāminī, <i>ye may</i> rēgantūr, <i>they may</i>	rēgērē, <i>be thou</i> rēgiminī, <i>be ye</i> <i>ruled.</i>
Imperfect.	S. rēgēbār, <i>I was</i> rēgēbā-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou wast</i> rēgēbātūr, <i>he was</i> Pl. rēgēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> rēgēbāminī, <i>ye were</i> rēgēbantūr, <i>they were</i>	rēgērēr, <i>I might</i> rēgērē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i> rēgērētūr, <i>he might</i> rēgērēmūr, <i>we might</i> rēgērēminī, <i>ye might</i> rēgērentūr, <i>they might</i>	rēgītōr, <i>thou</i> rēgītōr, <i>he</i> rēguntōr, <i>they</i> <i>must be ruled.</i>

Perfect.	S. rectus sum, I was rectus es, thou wast rectus est, he was Pl. recti sumus, we were recti estis, ye were recti sunt, they were	rectus sim, I may rectus sis, thou mayst rectus sit, he may recti simus, we may recti sitis, ye may recti sint, they may	have been ruled.
Future Perfect.	S. rectus ero, I shall rectus eris, thou wilt rectus erit, he will Pl. recti erimus, we shall recti eritis, ye will recti erunt, they will	.	Inf. Pres. Imp. regē, to be ruled. Inf. Perf. Plup. rectus esset, to have been ruled. Inf. Fut. . . rectum iri. Part. Perf. . rectus, ruled. Gerundive. . regendus, meet to be ruled.
Pluperfect.	S. rectus eram, I had rectus eras, thou hadst rectus erat, he had Pl. recti eramus, we had recti eratis, ye had recti erant, they had	rectus essem, I should rectus esses, thou wouldst rectus esset, he would recti essemus, we should recti essetis, ye would recti essent, they would	have been ruled.

* Or, rectus sum, &c., I have, thou hast. he has, we have, ye have, they have (been ruled).

§ 58. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. audiōr, <i>I am</i> audi-ris vel -rē, <i>thou art</i> audītūr, <i>he is</i> Pl. audimūr, <i>we are</i> audimīnī, <i>ye are</i> • audiuntūr, <i>they are</i> heard.	audiār, <i>I may</i> audiā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i> audiātūr, <i>he may</i> audiamūr, <i>we may</i> audiamīnī, <i>ye may</i> • audiantūr, <i>they may</i> be heard.	audirē, <i>be thou</i> audimīnī, <i>be ye</i> heard.
Imperfect.	S. audiēbār, <i>I was</i> audiēbā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wast</i> • audiēbātūr, <i>he was</i> Pl. audiēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> audiēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> • audiēbantūr, <i>they were</i> being heard.	audirē, <i>I might</i> audirē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i> audirētūr, <i>he might</i> audirēmūr, <i>we might</i> audirēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> • audirētūr, <i>they might</i> be heard.	audītōr, <i>thou</i> audītōr, <i>he</i> • audīuntōr, <i>they</i> must be heard.

Perfect.			VERB INFINITE.
<i>S.</i> auditūs sum, <i>I was</i> * <i>Pl.</i> auditūs es, <i>thou wast</i> auditūs est, <i>he was</i> auditū sūmus, <i>we were</i> auditū estis, <i>ye were</i> auditū sunt, <i>they were</i>	heard. auditūs sim, <i>I may</i> auditūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> auditūs sit, <i>he may</i> auditū simūs, <i>we may</i> auditū sitis, <i>ye may</i> auditū sint, <i>they may</i>	have been heard.	Inf. Pres. Imp. audiri, <i>to be heard.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. auditūs esse, <i>to have been heard.</i> Inf. Fut. . . auditum iri. Part. Perf. . auditūs, <i>heard.</i> Gerundive . . audiendus, <i>meet to be heard.</i>
<i>S.</i> auditūs erō, <i>I shall</i> auditūs erās, <i>thou wilt</i> auditūs erit, <i>he will</i> <i>Pl.</i> auditū erimūs, <i>we shall</i> auditū eritis, <i>ye will</i> auditū erunt, <i>they will</i>	have been heard.		
<i>S.</i> auditūs eram, <i>I had</i> auditūs erās, <i>thou hadst</i> auditūs erāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> auditū erāmūs, <i>we had</i> auditū erātis, <i>ye had</i> auditū erant, <i>they had</i>	been heard.	have been heard. auditūs essem, <i>I should</i> auditūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> auditūs essēt, <i>he would</i> auditū essēmūs, <i>we should</i> auditū essētis, <i>ye would</i> auditū essent, <i>they would</i>	

* Or, auditūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been heard).*

	INDICATIVE MOOD.						
	Singular.			Plural.			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Present.	Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Aud-	ō ēō ō iō	ās ēs īs is	āt ēt it it	āmūs ēmūs imūs imūs	ātīs ētīs ītīs ītīs	ant ent unt iunt
Fut. Simple.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	bō am	bīs ēs	bīt ēt	bīmūs ēmūs	bītīs ētīs	bunt ent
Imperfect.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg-ē- Audī-ē-	bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
Perfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audiv-	i	istī	it	imūs	istīs	ērunt v. ērē
Fut. Perf.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audiv-	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērint
Pluperfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audiv-	ēram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.				Future.		
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.			S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.
Ām-	Ā	ātē	}	ātō	ātō	ātōtē	antō
Mōn-	ē	ētē		ētō	ētō	ētōtē	entō
Rēg-	ē	ītē		ītō	ītō	ītōtē	untō
Aud-	i	itē		itō	itō	itōtē	iuntō

Note.—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av, ev, ov, v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērē*), and contraction always follows:

āmāvistī × āmāstī implēvīasem × implēssem nōvīstī × nostī

āmāvērunt × āmārunt implēvēram × implēram nōvērae × nōram

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv, v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: *audivi* × *audī*; *audīvistī* × *audīstī* × *audīstī*.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: *dixī* for *dixistī*, *accostis* for *accostistis*, *surrexē* for *surrexistē*; *ērepsēmūs* for *ērepsissēmūs*.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
	Singular.			Plural.			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Ām-	em	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent	
Mōn-	eam	ēas	ēāt	eamūs	ēātīs	ēant	
Rēg-	am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant	
Aud-	iam	iās	iāt	iāmūs	iātīs	iant	
Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	} rem	rēs	rēt	rēmūs	rētīs	rent	
Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-		erim	erīs	erit	erimūs	eritīs	erint
Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-		} issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent
VERB INFINITIVE.							
INFINITIVE.			GERUND.				
Pres. Imperf.	Perf. Pluperf.		N. Ac. G. D. Abl.				
Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	} rē	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	} issē	Ām-and- Mōn-end- Rēg-end- Audī-end-	um, ī, ō		
PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf.			SUPINES.		PARTICIPLE Future.		
Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Audī-	ans ens	Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	1. 2. um, ū		ūrus.		

INDICATIVE MOOD.							
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Aud-	ōr ēor ōr iōr	āris* ēris ēris īris	ātūr ētūr ītūr itūr	āmūr ēmūr īmūr imūr	āmīnī ēmīnī īmīnī imīnī	antūr entūr untūr iuntūr
Fut. Simple.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	} bōr ār	bēris v. bēre ēris v. ēre	bītūr ētūr	bīmūr ēmūr	bīmīnī ēmīnī	buntūr entūr
Imperfect.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-ē-	} bār	bāris v. bāre	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr
Perfect.	Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	} ūs sum†	ūs ēs	ūs est	ī sūmūs	ī estīs	ī sunt
Fut. Perf.	Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	} ūs ērō	ūs ēris	ūs ērit	ī ērīmūs	ī ērītīs	ī ērunt
Pluperfect.	Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	} ūs ēram	ūs ērās	ūs ērāt	ī ērāmūs	ī ērātīs	ī ērant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
Present.			Future.		
S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	rē ērē rē	mīnī īmīnī mīnī	tōr tōr tōr	tōr tōr tōr	ntōr ntōr untōr

* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write *rē* for *rīs* on account of the confusion with Infīn. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases *fūi* is occasionally used for *sum*, *fūerō* for *ērō*, *fūeram* for *ēram*, *fūerim* for *sim*, *fūissem* for *essem*, and *fūisē* for *essē* : *Āmātūs fūi*, *fūerō*, *fūeram*, *fūerim*, *fūissem*, *fūisē*, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
Singular.			Plural.			
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Am- Mönē- Rēg- Audi- }	ēr ār	ērīs v. ērē ārīs v. ārē	ētūr ātūr	ēmūr āmūr	ēmīnī āmīnī	entūr antūr
Āmā- Mönē- Rēgē- Audi- }	rēr	rērīs v. rērē	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
Āmāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audit- }	ūs sim	ūs sīs	ūs sīt	i sīmūs	i sītīs	i sint
Āmāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audit- }	ūs essem	ūs essēs	ūs essēt	i essēmūs	i essētīs	i essent
VERB INFINITIVE.						
Pres. Imperf.			INFINITIVE.		Future.	
			Perf. Pluperf.			
Āmā- Mönē- Rēg- Audi- }	rī ī rī		Amāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audit- }	ūs essē	Amāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audit- }	um irī
PARTICIPLE Perfect.			GERUNDIVE.			
Āmat- Mönīt- Rect- Audit- }	ūs		Āmand- Mönend- Rēgend- Audiend- }	ūs.		

§ 51. CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	S. ūtār, I shall ūtē-ris v. -rē, thou wilt ūtētūr, he will Pl. ūtēmūr, we shall ūtēmīnī, ye will ūtentūr, they will	ūtār, I may ūtā-ris v. -rē, thou mayst ūtātūr, he may ūtāmūr, we may ūtāmīnī, ye may ūtantūr, they may	ūtērē, use thou ūtīmīnī, use ye ūtītōr, thou ūtītōr, he ūtuntōr, they
Imperfect.	S. ūtēbār, I was ūtēbā-ris v. -rē, thou wast Pl. ūtēbātūr, he was ūtēbāmūr, we were ūtēbāmīnī, ye were ūtēbantūr, they were	ūvērēr, I might ūtērē-ris v. -rē, thou mightst ūtērētūr, he might ūtērēmūr, we might ūtērēmīnī, ye might ūtērentūr, they might	ūtērē, use thou ūtīmīnī, use ye ūtītōr, thou ūtītōr, he ūtuntōr, they

Perfect		ūsūs sim, <i>I may</i> ūsūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> ūsūs sīt, <i>he may</i> ūsī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> ūsī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> ūsī aint, <i>they may</i> <i>have used.</i>	VERB INFINITIVE. Inf. Pres. Imp. ūtī, <i>to use.</i> Inf. Perf. Plup. ūsūs essē, <i>to have used.</i> Inf. Fut. . . ūsūrūs essē, <i>to be about to use.</i> Ger. Nom. Ac. ūtendum, <i>using.</i> Ger. Gen. . . ūtendī, <i>of using.</i> Ger. Dat. Abl. ūtendō, <i>for. or by using.</i> Sup. in um . . ūsum, <i>to use.</i> Sup. in u . . ūsū, <i>in using, or to be used.</i> Part. Pres. . ūtens, <i>using.</i> Part. Fut. . . ūsūrūs, <i>about to use.</i> Part. Perf. . ūsūs, <i>having used.</i> Gerundive . . ūtendūs, <i>to be used.</i>
Future Perfect	S. ūsūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> ūsūs ēris, <i>thou wilt</i> ūsūs ērit, <i>he will</i> Pl. ūsī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> ūsī ērītīs, <i>ye will</i> ūsī ērunt, <i>they will</i> <i>have used.</i>		
Pluperfect	S. ūsūs ēram, <i>I had</i> ūsūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> ūsūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. ūsī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> ūsī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> ūsī ērant, <i>they had</i> <i>used.</i>	ūsūs essem, <i>I should</i> ūsūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> ūsūs essēt, <i>he would</i> ūsī essēmūs, <i>we should</i> ūsī essētīs, <i>ye would</i> ūsī essent, <i>they would</i> <i>have used.</i>	

* Or, ūsūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (used).*

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-	ēr	ē-ris (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Vēr-	ēār	ēā-ris (rē)	ēātūr	ēāmūr	ēāmīnī	ēantūr
Ūt-	ār	ā-ris (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
Part-	iār	iā-ris (rē)	iātūr	iāmūr	iāmīnī	iāntūr

Vēnā-	}						
Vērē-							
Ūt-ē-		rēr	rērīs v.	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
Partī-			rērē				

Vēnāt-	}						
Vērīt-							
Ūs-							
Partīt-							
		ūs	ūs •	ūs	ī	ī •	ī
		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint

Vēnāt-	}					
Vērīt-						
Ūs-						
Partīt-						
		ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī
		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs
						essent

VERB INFINITE.

INFIN. Pres. Imperf.	INFIN. Perf. Plup.	PART. Fut.	INFIN. Fut.
Vēnā-	}		
Vērē-			
Ūt-			
Partī-			
		rī	
		ī	
		rī	
		ūs	ūs
		essē	essē

PART. Pres.	GERUND?	GERUNDIVE.	PART. Perf.	SUPINES.
Vēnans	Vēnand-	} um, ī, ō ūs	Vēnāt-	} um, ū.
Vērens	Vērend-		Vērit-	
Ūtens	Ūtend-		Ūs-	
Partiēns	Partiend-		Partīt-	

§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *i-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this *i* generally; but not before *i*, final *e*, and short *ēr*. These Verbs are (English at pp. 68 &c.): —

Căpîō, cūpîō, and făcîō,
 Țodîō, fūgîō, and jăcîō,
 Părîō, răpîō, săpîō, quătîō,
 Compounds of spēcîō and lăcîō.
 Deponent: grădîōr, pătîōr, mōrîōr;
 And, in some tenses, pōtîōr, ōrîōr.

EXAMPLES.

ACTIVE.

Indic. Pres. căpî-ō, căp-is, -ît, -îmūs, -îtis, căpî-unt.^o
 Fut. căpî-am, -ēs, -ēt, -ēmūs, -ētis, -ent.
 Imperf. căpî-ēbam, -ēbās, -ēbăt, -ēbāmūs, -ēbătis, -ēbant.
 Conj. Pres. căpî-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmus, -ătis, -ant.
 Imperf. căp-ērem, -ērēs, -ērēt, -ērēmūs, -ērētis, -ērent.
 Imper. Pres. căp-ě, -itě.
 Fut. căp-îtō, -îtōtě, căpî-untō.

Inf. Pres. căp-ērě. Gerund, căpî-endum, -endī, -endō.

DEPONENT.

Indic. Pres. pătî-ōr, păt-ērīs, -îtūr, -îmūr, -îminī, pătî-untūr.
 Fut. pătî-ār, -ērīs, -ētūr, -ēmūr, -ēmīnī, -entūr.
 Imperf. pătî-ēbār, -ēbārīs, -ēbătūr, -ēbāmūr, -ēbāmīnī, -ēbantūr.
 Conj. Pres. pătî-ār, -ārīs, -ătūr, -āmūr, -āmīnī, -antūr.
 Imperf. păt-ērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr, -ērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.
 Imper. Pres. păt-ērě, -imīnī.
 Fut. păt-îtōr, pătî-untōr.
 Inf. Pres. păt-l Gerund, pătî-endūm, -endī, -endō. Gerundive,
 pătî-endūs.

Note 1. Ōrîōr is conjugated like pătîōr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation: ōrīrī, ōrīrēr, etc. Pōtîōr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth: pōtītūr or pōtītūr; pōtīmūr or pōtīmūr; pōtērēr or pōtērēr.

Note 2. Mōrîōr, ōrîōr, have Future Participles mōrītūrūs, ōrītūrūs.

B. Verbs in *ūō* retain *u* in all forms; indūō, indūs, indūi, indūērě.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in *ūrūs*, *dūs*, may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb sum.

[illegible]

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: *ānātūrūs sum, I am about to love*; *āmandūs sum, I am meet to be loved* (or, *I am to be loved*). *Sg* also *fūtūrūs sum, I am about to be*; *fūtūrūs sim, eram, essem, &c.*

SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered :

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *āmō, love, am loving.*

Imp. *āmābam, loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. *āmāvī, loved (Simple Past), have loved (Present Past).*

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses :

(1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb :

(2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs ; generally *would* or *should* ; sometimes *can, could ; may, might ; shall, or will* :

*āmem tē (sī bōnūs sīs),
I can love you (if you are good).*

*āmārem tē (sī bōnūs essēs),
I should—would—love you (if you were good), or
I should have been loving you (if you were good).*

*āmāvissem tē (sī bōnūs fūissēs or essēs),
I should—would—have loved you (had you been good).*

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English : *ēdē ūt vivās, eat that you may live* ; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative : *sīs, essēs, fūissēs*, in the last Examples. So :

Laudātūr quōd pārūrīt, he is praised in that he obeyed.

Laudāvī eum quī pārūissēt, I praised him (as one) who had obeyed.

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively :

Active.

*Āmem, may I, or let me
Āmēs, mayst thou, or see
thou*

Āmēt, may he, or let him

Āmēmūs, may we, or let us

Āmētīs, may ye, or see ye

Āment, may they, or let them

Passive.

*Āmēr, may I, or let me
Āmērīs, mayst thou, or see
thou*

Āmētūr, may he, or let him

Āmēmūr, may we, or let us

Āmēmīnī, may ye, or see ye

Āmentūr, may they, or let them,

be loved.

THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in *rē, rī,* are 'Present or Imperfect'; Infinitives in *issē, tūs-essē,* Perfect or Pluperfect:

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārē,</i>
<i>He is said to be loving.</i> | (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārī,</i>
<i>He is said to be loved.</i> |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmārē,</i>
<i>He was said to have been loving.</i> | <i>Dicēbatūr āmārī,</i>
<i>He was said to have been (at the time) loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciō ēum āmārē,</i>
<i>I know (that) he is loving.</i> | <i>Sciō ēum āmārī,</i>
<i>I know (that) he is loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciēbam ēum āmārē,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he was loving.</i> | <i>Sciēbam ēum āmārī,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he was loved.</i> |
| (2) <i>Dicītūr āmāvissē,</i>
<i>He is said to have loved.</i> | (2) <i>Dicītūr āmātūs essē,</i>
<i>He is said to have been loved.</i> |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmāvissē,</i>
<i>He was said to have loved.</i> | <i>Dicēbatūr āmātūs essē,</i>
<i>He was said to have been (at a former time) loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciō ēum āmāvissē,</i>
<i>I know (that) he loved.</i>
<i>I know (that) he has loved.</i> | <i>Sciō ēum āmātum essē,</i>
<i>I know he was loved.</i>
<i>I know he has been loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciēbam ēum āmāvissē,</i>
<i>I knew (that) he had loved.</i> | <i>Sciēbam ēum āmātum essē,</i>
<i>I knew he had been loved.</i> |

§ 69. A. The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, *-ūrūs essē, -ūrūs fūissē,* the uses of which a few instances will show:—

- (a) *Crēdērīs itūrūs essē, you are believed to be about to go.*
Crēdō tē itūrum essē, I believe (that) you will go.
- (b) *Crēdēbārīs itūrūs essē, you were believed to be about to go.*
Crēdēbam tē itūrum essē, I believed that you would go.
- (c) *Crēdērīs itūrūs fūissē, you are believed to have been about to go.*
Crēdō tē itūrum fūissē, I believe that you would have gone.

DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated or intenser action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō, -sō*, from Supine-stems: *cantō, I sing* (*cānō, cantum*), *curso, I run* (*cūrrō, cursum*); or by adding *-i-tō, -i-tōr* to the Clipt Stem, *rōgītō, I ask often* (*rōgō*).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem:

<i>Lābascō,</i>	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from <i>lābārē.</i>
<i>Pallescō,</i>	<i>I turn pale,</i>	„ <i>pallērē.</i>

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*;

<i>*Pūēascō,</i>	<i>I become a boy,</i>	from <i>pūēr.</i>
<i>Mītescō,</i>	<i>I become mild,</i>	„ <i>mītis.</i>

III. Desiderative Verbs express desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed by adding *-ūrīō* to the Supine-stem:

<i>Ēsūrīō, *</i>	<i>I am hungry,</i>	from <i>ēdō, ēs-um.</i>
<i>Partūrīō,</i>	<i>I am in labour,</i>	„ <i>pārīō, part-um.</i>

QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

<i>Exulō, I am banished</i> (<i>ārē</i>).	<i>Vāpūlō, I am beaten</i> (<i>ārē</i>).
<i>Fīō, I am made.</i>	<i>Vēnēō, I am on sale</i> (<i>irē</i>).
<i>I am put to auction.</i>	

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

• <i>Audēō, I dare,</i>	Perf. <i>ausūs sum, I dared.</i>
• <i>Fidō, I trust,</i>	„ <i>fiśtūs sum, I trusted.</i>
<i>Gaudēō, I am glad,</i>	„ <i>gāvīsūs sum, I was glad.</i>
<i>Sōlēō, I am wont,</i>	„ <i>sōlītūs sum, I was wont.</i>

Some have Active Perfect with Dependent Perfect Participles:

Present.	Perfect.	Part. Perf.●
<i>Jūrō, I swear</i>	<i>jūrāvī, I swore</i>	<i>jūrātūs, having sworn.</i>
<i>Cēnō, I sup</i>	<i>cēnāvī, I supped</i>	• <i>cēnātūs, having supped.</i>
<i>Prandēō, I dine</i>	<i>prandī, I dined</i>	<i>pransūs, having dined.</i>

• So *nuptā, wedded, pōtūs, having drunk*, and some others.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I: The Verbs *coepi*, *I have begun*, *ōdi*, *I hate*, *mēmīnī*, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

SCHEME.

	Indic.	Conj.	Infīn.	
Coep-	ī	ērim	issē	Perf.
Ōd-	ērō			Fut. Perf.
Mēmīn-	ēram	issem	issē	Plup.

Mēmīnī has Imperative Fut. Sing. *mēmentō*; Plur. *mēmentōtē*

Coepī has Part. Perf. *coeptūs*; Fut. *coeptūrus*.

Ōdi „ „ *ōsūs* „ *ōsūrūs*.

a. Nōvī, *I know* (from *noscō*), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine: as, *mītescō*, *pollō*, *fūrō*, *fērō*.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms:

(1) *Aiō*, *I say* 'ay,' *affirm*.

Indic. Pres. *aiō*, *āis*, *āit* — — *aiunt*.

„ Imperf. *aiēbam*, *-bās*, &c., complete.

Conj. Pres. — *aiās*, *aiāt* — — *aiant*.

(2) *Inquam*, *I say*.

Indic. Pres. *inquam*, *inquīs*, *inquīt*, *inquīmūs* — *inquūt*.

„ Imperf. — — *inquībāt* — — *inquībant*.

„ S. Fut. — *inquīēs*, *inquīēt*.

„ Perf. — *inquistī*, *inquīt*.

Imper. Pres. *inquē* — — *inquītē*.

(3) *Quaesō*, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. *quaesūmūs*.

(4) *Fārī*, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms: as, *fātūr*, *he speaks*; *fābōr*, *I shall speak*; *fārē*, *speak thou*. Participles: *fātūs*; *fandūs*. Gerund: *fandī*, *fandō*.

(5) The Imperatives:

a. Apāgē, *begone*.

Cēdō, *cēditē* (or *cettē*), *give here*.

Hāvē (or *āvē*), *hāvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *hāvērē*.

Salvē, *salvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *salvērē*. Fut. *salvēbīs*.

b. Āgē, *āgītē*, *come*; *Vālē*, *vālētē*, *farewell*; Infīn. *vālērē*; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs *āgō*, *vālēcō* are fully conjugated.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation :

Ōportēt, dēcēt, dēdēcēt,	<i>it behoves, beseems, misbeseems,</i>
Pīgēt, pūdēt, paenītēt,	<i>it irks, shames, repents,</i>
Taedēt add and misērēt,	<i>it disgusts, moves pity,</i>
Libēt, licēt, and liquēt,	<i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear,</i>
Attinēt and pertinēt.	<i>it relates, belongs.</i>

+ Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

		INDIC.	CONJUNG.	NUM.	
	1. Ōport-				
	2. Dēc-				
	3. Dēdēc-				
mē, tē, ēum,	4. Iīg-	ēt	ēāt	ērd.	Pres.
nōs, vōs, ēōs	5. Pūd-	ēbīt.			S. Fut.
	6. Paenīt-	ēbāt	ērēt.		Imperf.
	7. Taed-	ūit	ūērīt	ūissē.	Perf.
	8. Mīsēr-	ūērīt.			Fut. Perf.
mīhī, etc.	9. Līb-	ūērāt	ūissēt.		Pluperf.
	10. Līc-				
ād mē, etc.	11. Attin-				
	12. Pertin-				

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

Sing.	Ōportēt mē irē,	<i>it behoves me</i>	} to go,	or I	} ought to go.
	ōportēt tē irē,	" " you		you	
	ōportēt ēum irē,	" " him		he	
Plur.	ōportēt nōs irē,	" " us	} to go,	we	} go.
	ōportēt vōs irē,	" " you		ye	
	ōportēt ēōs irē,	" " them		they	

Sing.	Licēt mīhī irē,	<i>it is allowed me</i>	} to go,	or I	} may go.
	licēt tībī irē,	" " you		you	
	licēt ēī irē,	" " him		he	
Plur.	licēt nōbīs irē,	" " us	} to go,	we	} may go.
	licēt vōbīs irē,	" " you		ye	
	licēt iīs irē,	" " them		they	

So in the other Tenses and Moods.

(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are :

Accidit, <i>it happens</i>	} mihī, tibi, ei, etc.	Dēlectāt, <i>it charms</i>	} mē, tē, eum, etc. mēā, tuā, ejus, etc.
Contingit, <i>it befalls</i>		Jūvāt, <i>it delights</i>	
Evenit, <i>it turns out</i>		Intērest, <i>it concerns</i>	
Convēnit, <i>it suits</i>		Rēfert, <i>it imports</i>	
Expēdit, <i>it is expedient</i>		Constāt, <i>it is acknowledged</i>	

(3) Some Impersonals express changes of season and weather :

Fulgūrāt, <i>it lightens.</i>	Tōnāt, <i>it thunders.</i>
Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Lūcescit, <i>it dawns.</i>
Plūit, <i>it rains.</i>	Vespērascit, <i>it gets late.</i>

§ 76. B. (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice: lūdītūr, *there is playing*, from lūdō, *I play*.

	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Infinitive.
Present	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdi.
Simple Fut.	lūdētūr		lūsum iri.
Imperf.	lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	
Perfect	lūsum est	lūsum sīt	lūsum essē.
Fut. Perf.	lūsum ērit		
Pluperf.	lūsum ērāt	lūsum essēt	lūsum fūissē.

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent :

Present Indicative.				
Sing.	Lūdītūr ā mē, <i>there is playing by me,</i>	or <i>I play,</i>		
	lūdītūr ā tē, " "	<i>thee, thou playest,</i>		
	lūdītūr āb ēō, " "	<i>him, he plays,</i>		
Plur.	lūdītūr ā nōbīs, " "	<i>us, we play,</i>		
	lūdītūr ā vōbīs, " "	<i>you, ye play,</i>		
	lūdītūr āb hīs, " "	<i>them, they play.</i>		

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context.

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with *essē* to express meetness or necessity: sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.				
Sing.	Lūdendum est mihī, <i>there must be playing by me,</i>	or <i>I</i>		
	lūdendum est tibi, " "	<i>thee, thou</i>		
	lūdendum est ei, " "	<i>him, he</i>		
Plur.	lūdendum est nōbīs, " "	<i>us, we</i>		
	lūdendum est vōbīs, " "	<i>you, ye</i>		
	lūdendum est hīs, " "	<i>the, they</i>		

Here too the Case is often omitted: nunc est biberdum, *now we (or men) must drink.*

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in *sum*, *possum*, *fērō*; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of *letters*, as in *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *ēō*, *quēō*, *ēdō*.

§ 79. CONJUGATION-FORM OF ANOMALOUS VERBS.

	1. <i>Be able.</i>	2. <i>Wish.</i>	3. <i>Not-wish.</i>	4. <i>Wish-rather.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Possum	Vōlō	Nōlō	Mālō
2 Pers. „	pōtēs	vis	nonvis	māvis
Infinit. „	possē	vellē	nollē	mallē
Perfect	pōtū-i	vōlū-i	nōlū-i	mālū-i
Ger. in <i>dym</i>	—	(vōlend-um)	(nōlend-um)	(mālend-um)
„ <i>dī</i>	—	vōlend-i	nōlend-i	mālend-i
„ <i>dō</i>	—	vōlend-ō	nōlend-ō	mālend-ō
Part. Pres.	—	vōlens	nōlens	mālens

Pōtens, *able*, *powerful*, is used as an Adjective.

	5. <i>Bear.</i>	6. <i>Be made.</i>	7. <i>Go.</i>	8. <i>Can.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Fērō	Fiō	Ēō	Quēō
2 Pers. „	fers	fis	is	quis
Infinit. „	ferrē	fiērī	irē	quirē
Perfect	tūlī	factūs sum	ivī	quivī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	fērend-um	—	ēund-um	
„ <i>dī</i>	fērend-i	—	ēund-i	
„ <i>dō</i>	fērend-ō	—	ēund-ō	
Supine in <i>um</i>	lāt-um	—	īt-um	
„ <i>ū</i>	lāt-ū	—	īt-ū	
Part. Pres.	fēr-ens	—	iens (ēunt-is)	
„ Fut.	lāt-ūrūs	—	īt-ūrūs	

5. Fērō (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferris (for fēr-ēris); 3. fertūr; Imperf. Conj. fēr-r-ēr (for fēr-ērēr), ferrēris, etc., and Inf. ferri. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātūs sum, etc.

6. Fiō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of faciō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms of the Passive.

8. Quēo and its compound nēquēō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ēō.

9. Ēdō, *I eat*, often changes some of its forms as follows:

Pres. 2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.	Infinit.	Imperf. Conj.
ēdis or es	ēdit or est	ēdūrē or essē	ēdērem or essem.

Pres. Conj. ēdim, ēdis, ēdit, is used. Other forms are regular.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
Present Tense.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
	Possum	pōtēs	pōtest	possumūs	pōtestīs	pōssunt	
Future Simple.	Vōlō	vis	vult	vōlūmūs	vultīs	vōlunt	
	Nōlō	nonvis	nonvult	nōlūmūs	nonvultīs	nōlunt	
Imperfect.	Mālo	māvis	māvult	mālūmūs	māvultīs	mālunt	
	Fērō	fers	fert	fērīmūs	fertīs	fērunt	
Perfect.	Fīo	fis	fit	—	—	fiunt	
	Eō	is	it	imūs	itīs	eunt	
Future Perfect.	Pōt-	ērō	eris	erit	erimūs	eritīs	erunt
	Vōl-						
Pluperfect.	Nōl-	am	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	erunt
	Māl-						
Future Perfect.	Fēr-	bō	bis	bit	bimūs	bitīs	bunt
	Fī-						
Pluperfect.	I-	eram	erās	erāt	erimūs	erātīs	erant
	Pōt-						
Future Perfect.	Vōl-	bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
	Nōl-						
Pluperfect.	Māl-						
	Fēr-						
Future Perfect.	Fī-						
	I-						
Pluperfect.	Pōtū-	ī	istī	it	imūs	istīs	erunt or erō
	Vōlū-						
Future Perfect.	Nōlū-	ērō	eris	erit	erimūs	eritīs	erint
	Mālū-						
Pluperfect.	Tūl-						
	—						
Future Perfect.	Iv-						
	Pōtū-	eram	erās	erāt	erāmūs	erātīs	erant
Pluperfect.	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
Future Perfect.	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
Pluperfect.	—						
	Iv-						

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present Tense.	Poss- Vēl- Nōl- Māl- Fēr- Fī- Ē-	im	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	int
		am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
Imperf. Tense.	Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fīēr- Īr-	em	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Perf. Tense.	Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- — Iv-	ērim	ēris	ērit	ērimūs	ēritīs	ēint
Pluperf. Tense.	Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- — Iv-	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
Present.			
Singular.		Plural.	
2.		2.	
(3) Nōlī		nōlītē	
(5) Fēr		fertē	
(6) Fī		fītē	
(7) Ī		ītē	
Future.			
2.		2.	
(3) Nōlītō	nōlītō	nōlītōtē	nōluntō
(5) Fertō	fertō	fertōtē	fēruntō
(7) Ītō	ītō	ītōtē	ēuntō

(For the Parts of VERB INFINITE, see Form of Conjugation, § 70.)

§ 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48, Note 2.)

I. FIRST CONJUGATION (Character A: ĀmĀ-rē).

Usual Form :	Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
	(ā-o) -ō		ā-vi	ā-tum
	Ām-ō	-ārē	āmā-vī	āmā-tum.

Exceptions.

	Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
			-ŭi, -itum.		
(1)	1. Crēpō	-ārē	crēpŭi	crēpĭtum	<i>creak.</i>
	2. Cūbō	-ārē	cūbŭi	cūbĭtum	<i>lie down.</i>
	3. Dōmō	-ārē	dōmŭi	dōmĭtum	<i>tame.</i>
	4. Micō	-ārē	mīcŭi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
	5. Plīcō	-ārē	plīcŭi	plīcĭtum	<i>fold.</i>
	6. Sōnō	-ārē	sōnŭi	sōnĭtum	<i>sound.</i>
	7. Tōnō	-ārē	tōnŭi	tōnĭtum	<i>thunder.</i>
	8. Vētō	-ārē	vētŭi	vētĭtum	<i>forbid.</i>

-ŭi, -tum.

(2)	— Sēcō	-ārē	sēcŭi	sectum	<i>cut.</i>
-----	--------	------	-------	--------	-------------

Redupl., -tum.

(3)	1. Dō	-ārē	dēdi	dātum	<i>give.</i>
	2. Stō	-ārē	stēti	statum	<i>stand.</i>

-vī, -tum.

(4)	1. Jŭvō	-ārē	jŭvī	jŭtum	<i>help.</i>
	2. Lāvō	-ārē	lāvī	lōtum	<i>wash.</i>

(1) 5. Also plīcāvī, plīcātum.

(3) 1. Dō, dārē, has short ā throughout; with the compounds circumdō, surround; pessumdō, ruin; vēnumdō, put on sale, which form -dēdi, -dātum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -didi, -ditum. III. 18.

2. Comp. ad-con-ob-per-prae-stō, etc., form stēti, statum (-stītum rare).

(4) 2. Also Sup. lāvatum.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION (Character B: MōnB-rē).

Usual Form :	-ēō		-ŭi	-itum
	Mōn-ēō	-ērē	mōn-ŭi	mōn-itum.

Exceptions.

				-vī, -tum.	
(1)	1. Dēlēō	-ērē	dēlēvī	dēlētum	<i>blot out.</i>
	2. Flēō	-ērē	flēvī	flētum	<i>weep.</i>
	3. -plēō	-ērē	-plēvī	-plētum	<i>fill.</i>
				-ŭi, -tum.	
(2)	1. Dōcēō	-ērē	dōcŭi	doctum	<i>teach.</i>
	2. Miscēō	-ērē	miscŭi	mixtum	<i>mix.</i>
	3. Tēnēō	-ērē	tēnŭi	-tentum	<i>hold.</i>

(1) 5. -plīcŭi -plīcĭtum. Forms thus noted are only used in the compounds.

-sī, -tum.

	Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(3) 1.	Augēō	-ērē	auxī	auctum	<i>increase.</i>
2.	Torquēō	-ērē	torsī	tortum	<i>twist.</i>
3.	Lūgēō	-ērē	luxī	—	<i>mourn.</i>

-sī, -sum.

(4) 1.	Mulcēō	-ērē	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe.</i>
2.	Ardēō	-ērē	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
3.	Ridēō	-ērē	rīsī	rīsum	<i>laugh.</i>
4.	Suādēō	-ērē	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise.</i>
5.	Mānēō	-ērē	mansi	mansum	<i>remain.</i>
6.	Jūbēō	-ērē	jussī	jussum	<i>command.</i>
7.	Haerēō	-ērē	haesi	haesum	<i>stick.</i>
8.	Fulgēō	-ērē	fulsi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
9.	Lūcēō	-ērē	luxī	—	<i>shine.</i>

Redupl., -sum.

(5) 1.	Mordēō	-ērē	mōmordi	morsum	<i>bite.</i>
2.	Pendēō	-ērē	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang.</i>
3.	Spondēō	-ērē	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise.</i>
4.	Tondēō	-ērē	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shear.</i>

-ī, -sum.

(6) 1.	Prandēō	-ērē	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine.</i>
2.	Sēdēō	-ērē	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
3.	Vidēō	-ērē	vidi	visum	<i>see.</i>

-ī, -tum.

(7) 1.	Cāvēō	-ērē	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware.</i>
2.	Fāvēō	-ērē	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour.</i>
3.	Fōvēō	-ērē	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish.</i>
4.	Mōvēō	-ērē	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move.</i>
5.	Vōvēō	-ērē	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow.</i>

Semi-deponent.

(8) 1.	Audēō	-ērē	ausūs sum	—	<i>dare.</i>
2.	Gaudēō	-ērē	gāvīsūs sum	—	<i>rejoice.</i>
3.	Sōlēō	-ērē	sōlītūs sum	—	<i>be wont.</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION (Character & Consonant or V).

Form various. Rēg-ērē; Indū-ērē.

A. Consonant-Verbs.

Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (five -sum).

(1) 1.	Dicō	-ērē	dixī	dictum	<i>say.</i>
2.	Ducō	-ērē	duxī	ductum	<i>lead.</i>
3.	Cingō	-ērē	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround.</i>
4.	Cōquō	-ērē	coxi	coctum	<i>cook.</i>
5.	Figō	-ērē	fixī	fixum	<i>fix.</i>
6.	Fingō	-ērē	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion.</i>
7.	Jungō	-ērē	junxi	junctum	<i>join.</i>

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
	8. Pingō	-ērē	pinxī	pictum	<i>paint.</i>
	9. Rēgō	-ērē	rexī	rectum	<i>rule.</i>
	10. Tēgō	-ērē	texī	tectum	<i>cover.</i>
	11. -stinguō	-ērē	-stinxī	-stinctum	<i>quench.</i>
	12. Tinguō	-ērē	tinxī	tinctum	<i>dye.</i>
	13. Unguō	-ērē	unxī	unctum	<i>anoint.</i>
(2)	1. Trāhō	-ērē	traxī	tractum	<i>draw.</i>
	2. Vēhō	-ērē	vexī	vectum	<i>carry.</i>
	3. Vivō	(-ērē)	vixī	victum	<i>live.</i>
	4. Flūō	-ērē	fluxī	fluxum	<i>flow.</i>
	5. Strūō	-ērē	struxī	structum	<i>pile.</i>
	6. -lāciō	-ērē	-lexī	-lectum	<i>entice.</i>
	7. -spēcīō	-ērē	-spexī	-spectum	<i>espy.</i>
(3)	1. Mergō	-ērē	mersī	mersum	<i>drown.</i>
	2. Spargō	-ērē	sparsī	sparsum	<i>sprinkle.</i>
	3. Tergō	-ērē	tersī	tersum	<i>wipe.</i>

Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

(4)	1. Claudō	-ērē	clausī	clausum	<i>shut.</i>
	2. Dividō	-ērē	divisī	divisum	<i>divide.</i>
	3. Laedō	-ērē	laesī	laesum	<i>hurt.</i>
	4. Lūdō	-ērē	lūsī	lūsum	<i>play.</i>
	5. Plaudō	-ērē	plausī	plausum	<i>clap the hands.</i>
	6. Rādō	-ērē	rāsī	rāsum	<i>scrape.</i>
	7. Rōdō	-ērē	rōsī	rōsum	<i>gnaw.</i>
	8. Trūdō	-ērē	trūsī	trūsum	<i>thrust.</i>
	9. Vādō	-ērē	-vāsī	-vāsum	<i>go.</i>
	10. Cādō	-ērē	cessī	cessum	<i>yield.</i>
	11. Mittō	-ērē	mīsī	missum	<i>send.</i>
	12. Quāt-iō	-ērē	(quassī)	quassum	<i>shake.</i>
	13. Flectō	-ērē	flexī	flexum	<i>bend.</i>
	14. Nectō	-ērē	nexī	nexum	<i>bind.</i>

Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

(5)	1. Carpō	-ērē	carpsī	carptum	<i>pluck.</i>
	2. Repō	-ērē	repsī	reptum	<i>creep.</i>
	3. Scalpō	-ērē	scalpsī	scalptum	<i>scratch.</i>
	4. Serpō	-ērē	(serpsī)	(serptum)	<i>crawl.</i>
	5. Nūbō	-ērē	nupsī	nuptum	<i>be married.</i>
	6. Scribō	-ērē	scripsī	scriptum	<i>write.</i>

Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (one -sum).

(6)	1. Cōmō	-ērē	compsī	comptum	<i>adorn.</i>
	2. Dēmō	-ērē	dempsī	demptum	<i>take away.</i>
	3. Prēmō	-ērē	prompsī	promptum	<i>take forth.</i>
	4. Sūmō	-ērē	sumpsī	sumptum	<i>take.</i>
	5. Temnō	-ērē	tempsī	temptum	<i>despise.</i>
	6. Prēmō	-ērē	pressī	pressum	<i>press.</i>
	7. Gērō	-ērē	gessī	gestum	<i>carry on.</i>
	8. Ūrō	-ērē	ussī	ustum	<i>burn.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Stem various, -ŭi, -tum (*one -sum*).

	Present.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(7) 1.	Elício	-ĕrĕ	ĕlicŭi	ĕlicitum	<i>entice forth.</i>
2.	Cumbō	-ĕrĕ	cŭbŭi	cŭbitum	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	Răpiō	-ĕrĕ	răpŭi	raptum	<i>snatch.</i>
4.	Strĕpō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭi	strĕpĭtum	<i>roar.</i>
5.	Mĕtō	-ĕrĕ	messŭi	messum	<i>mow.</i>
6.	Alō	-ĕrĕ	ălŭi	altum	<i>nourish.</i>
7.	Cōlō	-ĕrĕ	cōlŭi	cultum	<i>till.</i>
8.	Consŭlō	-ĕrĕ	consŭlŭi	consultum	<i>consult.</i>
9.	Occŭlō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭi	occultum	<i>hide.</i>
10.	Vōlō	vĕlle	vōlŭi	—	<i>wish.</i>
11.	Frēmō	-ĕrĕ	frēmŭi	frēmĭtum	<i>murmur.</i>
12.	Gēmō	-ĕrĕ	gēmŭi	gēmĭtum	<i>groan.</i>
13.	Trēmō	-ĕrĕ	trēmŭi	—	<i>tremble.</i>
14.	Vōmō	-ĕrĕ	vōmŭi	vōmĭtum	<i>vomit.</i>
15.	Pōnō	-ĕrĕ	pōsŭi	pōsitum	<i>place.</i>
16.	Gignō	-ĕrĕ	gĕnŭi	gĕnĭtum	<i>produce.</i>
17.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕrŭi	sertum	<i>join.</i>
18.	Texō	-ĕrĕ	texŭi	textum	<i>weave.</i>

Present Stem Anomalous, -vī, -tum.

(8) 1.	Līnō	-ĕrĕ	lāvī	lĭtum	<i>smear.</i>
2.	Sīnō	-ĕrĕ	sīvī	sĭtum	<i>allow.</i>
3.	Cernō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>sift, discern.</i>
4.	Spernō	-ĕrĕ	sprĕvī	sprĕtum	<i>despise.</i>
5.	Sternō	-ĕrĕ	strāvī	strātum	<i>strew.</i>
6.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕvī	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
7.	Crescō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>grow.</i>
8.	Noscō	-ĕrĕ	nōvī	nōtum	<i>become acquainted</i>
9.	Pascō	-ĕrĕ	pāvī	pastum	<i>feed.</i>
10.	Quiescō	-ĕrĕ	quiĕvī	—	<i>rest.</i>
11.	Suescō	-ĕrĕ	suĕvī	suĕtum	<i>be wont.</i>
12.	Cupĭō	-ĕrĕ	cŭpĭvī	cŭpĭtum	<i>desire.</i>
13.	Pĕtō	-ĕrĕ	pĕtĭvī	pĕtĭtum	<i>seek.</i>
14.	Quaerō	-ĕrĕ	quāesīvī	quaesitum	<i>seek.</i>
15.	Tĕrō	-ĕrĕ	trīvī	trĭtum	<i>rub.</i>
16.	Arcessō	-ĕrĕ	arcessīvī	arcessitum	<i>send for.</i>
17.	Lācessō	-ĕrĕ	lācessīvī	lācessitum	<i>provoke.</i>

Redupl., -tum or -sum.

(9) 1.	Pendō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	<i>weigh.</i>
2.	Tendō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtendi	tensum(-tum)	<i>stretch.</i>
3.	Discō	-ĕrĕ	dīdici	—	<i>learn.</i>
4.	Poscō	-ĕrĕ	pōposcī	—	<i>demand.</i>
5.	Curro	-ĕrĕ	cŭcurri	cursum	<i>run.</i>
6.	Pungō	-ĕrĕ	pŭpŭgī	punctum	<i>prick.</i>
7.	Tunō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭdī	tansum	<i>thump.</i>
8.	Fallō	-ĕrĕ	fĕfellī	falsum	<i>deceive.</i>
9.	Parcō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpercī	parsum	<i>spare.</i>
10.	Pāriō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕrī	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>

(9) 9. Also Perf. parāi.

PRESENT, PERFECT, AND SUPINE :

Present.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
11. Cādō	-ērē	cēcīdī	cāsum	<i>fall.</i>
12. Cānō	-ērē	cēcīnī	cantum	<i>sing.</i>
13. Pangō	-ērē	pēpīgī	pactum	<i>fasten.</i>
14. Tapgō	-ērē	tētīgī	tactum	<i>touch.</i>
15. Caeđō	-ērē	cēcīdī	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill.</i>
16. Pellō	-ērē	pēpūlī	pulsum	<i>drive.</i>
17. Tollō	-ērē	sustūlī	sublātum	<i>take up.</i>
18. Compounds of dō :				
Abdō	-ērē	abdīdī	abdītum	<i>hide.</i>
Addō	-ērē	addīdī	addītum	<i>add.</i>
Condō	-ērē	condīdī	condītum	<i>found, hide.</i>
Crēdō	-ērē	crēdīdī	crēdītum	<i>believe.</i>
Dēdō	-ērē	dēdīdī	dēdītum	<i>give up.</i>
Ēdō	-ērē	ēdīdī	ēdītum	<i>give forth, utter.</i>
Perdō	-ērē	perdīdī	perdītum	<i>lose.</i>
Prōdō	-ērē	prōdīdī	prōdītum	<i>betray.</i>
Reddō	-ērē	reddīdī	reddītum	<i>restore.</i>
Subdō	-ērē	subdīdī	subdītum	<i>substitute.</i>
Trādō	-ērē	trādīdī	trādītum	<i>deliver.</i>
Vendō	-ērē	vendīdī	vendītum	<i>sell.</i>
19. Reduplicated from stō :				
Sistō	-ārē	-stītī	-stātum	<i>make to stand.</i>

-ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (*three -sum*).

(10)	1. Fāciō	-ērē	fēcī	factum	<i>make.</i>
	2. Jāciō	-ērē	jēcī	jactum	<i>throw.</i>
	3. Linqūō	-ērē	liquī	-lictum	<i>leave.</i>
	4. Vincō	-ērē	vici	victum	<i>conquer.</i>
	5. Agō	-ērē	ēgī	actum	<i>do.</i>
	6. Frangō	-ērē	frēgī	fractum	<i>break.</i>
	7. Lēgō	-ērē	lēgī	lectum	<i>choose, read.</i>
	8. Fūgō	-ērē	fūgī	fūgītum	<i>fly.</i>
	9. Ēdō	-ērē	ēdī	ēsūm	<i>eat.</i>
	10. Fōdō	-ērē	fōdī	fossum	<i>dig.</i>
	11. Fundō	-ērē	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour.</i>
	12. Cāpiō	-ērē	cēpī	captum	<i>take.</i>
	13. Rumpō	-ērē	rūpī	ruptum	<i>break.</i>
	14. Ēmō	-ērē	ēmī	emptum	<i>buy, take.</i>

-ī, -sum.

(11)	1. Findō	-ērē	fīdī	fissum	<i>cleave.</i>
	2. Scindō	-ērē	scīdī	scissum	<i>tear.</i>

-ī, -sum (one -tum).

(12)	1. -eandō	-ērē	-cendī	-censum	<i>set on fire.</i>
	2. -fendō	-ērē	-fendī	-fensum	<i>strike.</i>
	3. Pandō	-ērē	pandī	pansum	<i>spread.</i>
	4. Prēhendō	-ērē	prēhendī	prēhensum	<i>grasp.</i>
	5. Scandō	-ērē	scandī	scansum	<i>climb.</i>
	6. Vertō	-ērē	vertī	versum	<i>turn.</i>
	7. Bibō	-ērē	bibī	bibītum	<i>drink.</i>
	8. Vellō	-ērē	velli, vulsi	vulsum	<i>rend.</i>

B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

	Present.	Infīn.	Perfect.	Supīn.	
(13)	1. Acūō	-ērē	ācūī	ācūtum	<i>sharpen.</i>
	2. Argūō	-ērē	argūī	argūtum	<i>prove.</i>
	3. Exūō	-ērē	exūī	exūtum	<i>put off.</i>
	4. Imbūō	-ērē	imbūī	imbūtum	<i>tinge.</i>
	5. Indūō	-ērē	indūī	indūtum	<i>put on.</i>
	6. Lūō	-ērē	lūī	lūtum	<i>wash, atone.</i>
	7. Mētūō	-ērē	mētūī	—	<i>fear.</i>
	8. Minūō	-ērē	minūī	minūtum	<i>lessen.</i>
	9. Nūō	-ērē	nūī	—	<i>nod.</i>
	10. Rūō	-ērē	rūī	rūtum	<i>rush, fall.</i>
	11. Stātūō	-ērē	stātūī	stātūtum	<i>set up.</i>
	12. Tribūō	-ērē	tribūī	tribūtum	<i>assign.</i>
	13. Solvō	-ērē	solvī	sōlūtum	<i>loosen.</i>
	14. Volvō	-ērē	volvī	vōlūtum	<i>roll.</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Character I: Audī- rē).

Usual Form :	•	-īō	-irē	-ivī	-itum
•		Audīō	-irē	audivī	audītum.

Exceptions.

-ūī or ivī, -tum.

(1)	1. Āpērīō	-irē	āpērūī	āpertum	<i>open.</i>
	2. Ōpērīō	-irē	ōpērūī	ōpertum	<i>cover.</i>
	3. Sālīō	-irē	sālūī	(-sultum)	<i>leap.</i>
	4. Sēpēlīō	-irē	sēpēlīvī	sēpultum	<i>bury.</i>

-sī, -tum (one -sum).

(2)	1. Fulcīō	-irē	fulsī	fultum	<i>prop.</i>
	2. Sancīō	-irē	sansī	sanctum	<i>consecrate.</i>
	3. Vincīō	-irē	vinxī	vinctum	<i>bind.</i>
	4. Haurīō	-irē	hausī	haustum	<i>dram.</i>
	5. Sentīō	-irē	sensī	sensum	<i>feel.</i>

• -ī, -tum.

(3)	1. Compērīō	-irē	compērī	compertum	<i>find.</i>
	2. Rēpērīō	-irē	reppērī	rēpertum	<i>discover.</i>
	3. Vēnīō	• -irē	vēnī	• ventum	<i>come.</i>

V. DEPONENT VERBS.

1) FIRST CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ātūs).

• (2) SECOND CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

Exceptions.

Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
1. Fātēōr	-ērī	fassūs	<i>confess.</i>
2. Mīsērēōr	-ērī	mīsertūs or mīsērītūs	<i>have pity on.</i>
3. Rēōr	-ērī	rātūs	<i>think.</i>

(3) THIRD CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -tūs or -sūs).

	Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
(a) 1.	Fungōr	-ī	functūs	<i>perform.</i>
2.	Amplectōr	-ī	amplexūs	<i>embrace.</i>
3.	Nītōr	-ī	nīsūs or nixūs	<i>strive.</i>
4.	Pātior	-ī	passūs	<i>suffer.</i>
5.	Ūtōr	-ī	ūsūs	<i>use.</i>
6.	Grādīōr	-ī	gres-sūs	<i>step.</i>
7.	Lābōr	-ī	lapsūs	<i>glide.</i>
8.	Mōriōr	-ī	mortūūs	<i>die.</i>
9.	Quērōr	-ī	questūs	<i>complain.</i>
10.	Frūōr	-ī	frūtūs	<i>enjoy.</i>
11.	Lōquōr	-ī	lōcūtūs	<i>speak.</i>
12.	Sēquōr	-ī	sēcūtūs	<i>follow.</i>
(b) 1.	Āpiscōr	-ī	aptūs	<i>obtain.</i>
2.	Commīniscōr	-ī	commentūs	<i>devise.</i>
3.	Expērgiscōr	-ī	experrectūs	<i>wake up.</i>
4.	Fātiscōr	-ī	fessūs	<i>grow weary.</i>
5.	Irascōr	-ī	irātūs	<i>be angry.</i>
6.	Nāpiscōr	-ī	nactūs	<i>obtain.</i>
7.	Nascōr	-ī	nātūs	<i>be born.</i>
8.	Obliviscōr	-ī	oblīt s	<i>forget.</i>
9.	Pāiscōr	-ī	paētūs	<i>bargain.</i>
10.	Prōficiscōr	-ī	prōfectūs	<i>set out.</i>
11.	Ulciscōr	-ī	ultūs	<i>avenge.</i>

(4) FOURTH CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

Exceptions.

1.	Assentiōr	-īrī	assensūs	<i>agree to.</i>
2.	Expēriōr	-īrī	expertūs	<i>try.</i>
3.	Mētiōr	-īrī	mensūs	<i>measure.</i>
4.	Oppēriōr	-īrī	oppertūs	<i>wait for.</i>
5.	Orīōr	-īrī	or-sūs	<i>begin.</i>
6.	Ōriōr	-īrī	ortūs	<i>rise.</i>

Note. Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives : ingēmiscō (from gēmō), ingēmū, ingēmītum. Many Verbs are without Perfect; more still without Supine.

PARTICLES.

A. ADVERBS. (See p. 127.)

§ 82. I. ADVERBS OF PLACE: The Interrogatives are:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (1) Ūbi, <i>where?</i> | (4) Undē, <i>whence?</i> |
| (2) Quō, <i>whither?</i> | (5) Quā, <i>which way?</i> |
| (3) Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | (6) Quātēnūs, quōusquē, <i>how far?</i> |

II. ADVERBS OF TIME: The Interrogatives are:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Quandō, ūbi, <i>when?</i> | (2) Quamdiū, <i>how long?</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|

III. ADVERBS OF NUMBER: Interrogative Quōtīens, *how often?*

IV. ADVERBS OF MANNER: quomodo, *how*, &c.; CAUSE, cur, quare, *why*, &c.

Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, tēr; pulchrē *finely*; misērē, *wretchedly*; fortītēr, *bravely*; sāpientēr, *wisely*.

Note. Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, *not*. See p. 141.

B. PREPOSITIONS. (See p. 142.)

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

Ad, <i>to, at, &c.</i>	Juxtā, <i>adjoining to, beside.</i>
Adversūs } <i>toward, against.</i>	Ūb, <i>over against, by reason of.</i>
Adversum }	Pēnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Antē, <i>before.</i>	Pēr, <i>through.</i>
Apūd, <i>at, in, among.</i>	Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>
Circum, <i>around.</i>	Post, <i>after, behind.</i>
Circā, circitēr, <i>about.</i>	Praetēr, <i>beside.</i>
Cis, citrā, <i>on the near side of.</i>	Prōpē, <i>near, prōpiūs, proximē.</i>
Contrā, <i>against, over against.</i>	Proptēr, <i>nigh, on account of.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Sēcundum, <i>next, along, according to.</i>
Extrā, <i>outside of, out of.</i>	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Infrā, <i>below.</i>	Trans, <i>across.</i>
Intēr, <i>between, among, amidst.</i>	Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>
Intrā, <i>within.</i>	Versūs, Versum, <i>towards.</i>

The following take the Ablative Case.

Ā, āb, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	Ex, ē, <i>out of, from.</i>
Āsquē (rare), <i>without.</i>	Pālam, <i>in sight of.</i>
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.*</i>	Prae, <i>before, owing to, compared with.</i>
Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Sinē, <i>without.</i>
Dē, <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Tēnūs, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Note. Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quēcum, or quicūm, quibuscum.

The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

Ī, into, against (Acc.), in, upon, among (Abl.). **Sūpēr**, over, upon.
Sūb, up to, under (Acc.), under (Abl.). **Subtēr**, under.

Ī and **sūb** with Accusative imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are:—

A. Prepositions:—**ā** (āb, abs), **ād**, **antē**, **circum**, **cōn** (for cum), **dē**, **ex** (ē), in, **intēr**, **ōb**, **pēr**, **post**, **prae**, **praetēr**, **prō**, **sūb**, **subtēr**, **sūper**, **trans**.

B. Inseparable Particles:—**ambī-** (amb-), around, about; **dis-**, in different parts or ways; **rē-**, back, again; **sē-**, apart.

Note 1. Prepositions in composition suffer various changes; such as, **combībō** for **combibō**, **offendō** for **offendō**, **trādūcō** for **transducō**.

Note 2. Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change:

(1) *a* into *e*, **spargō**, **dispergō**; (2) *a* into *u*, **quātlō**, **conctitlō**; (3) *a* into *i*, **āgō**, **exigō**; (4) *e* into *i*, **rēgō**, **dirigō**; (5) *ae* into *i*, **quaeŕō**, **acquirō**.

Add to these, **claudō**, **excludō**, &c.; **plaudō**, **supplēdō**, &c.; and **audlō**, **ūboedlō**. See p. 124, II.

C. CONJUNCTIONS. (See p. 128.)

§ 84. CONJUNCTIONS are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood: **ēt**, **quē**, **ac**, **atquē** (*and*), **aut**, **vēl**, **vē** (*either, or*), **sēd**, **autem** (*but*), **nam**, **ēnim** (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood: **ūt** (*that*), **nē** (*lest*), **quōd**, **quīā** (*because*), **quum** (*when, since*), **sī** (*if*), **nīsī**, **nī** (*unless*), &c., &c.

§ 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force:—

They are, the enclitic **-nē**, **ān**, **num**, **ūtrum** (*whether*): the compounds of the last three with **-nē**; namely, **annē**, **numnē**, **ūtrumnē**: and the compounds of **ān**, **-nē**, with the negative; namely, **annōn**, **nonnē**.

D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

O, **O!** *oh!*

A, *alas!*

Ēheu,

Heu, **ei**,

} *alas!*

Prō, *forbid it!*

Vae, *woe!*

Ēn,

Eccē,

} *lo! behold!*

Note. Of these, **ō**, **ā**, **ēheu**, **heu**, **prō**, may be used with a Vocative Case: the same, as well as **ēn**, **eccē**, with a Nominative or Accusative: **ei**, **vae**, with a Dative.

SYNTAX.

PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. *A. A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought:*

Psittăcūs lōquītūr,
The parrot speaks.

Psittăcūs nōn lōquītūr,
The parrot does not speak.

B. That of which something is said, is called the Subject :

Psittăcūs, *the parrot.*

a. The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.

C. The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: Lōquītūr, speaks.

a. Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 Obs.), a single Verb may be a sentence :

Vēnī,
I came,

Vidī,
I saw,

Vicī,
I conquered.

D. Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essē), to be, is usually a Cōpŭlă, or Link; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called a Complement; both together forming the Predicate:

Subject.	Copula.	Predicate.
Hōmō	est	mortālīs,
<i>Man</i>	is	<i>mortal.</i>
Hōmīnēs	sūt	ānīmālīă,
<i>Men</i>	are	<i>animals.</i>

Note. The Copula is often omitted : Rārī bōnī, (*good men are few*).

a. Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative (Link) Verbs : fiō, become; nascōr, am born; vidēōr, seem; dicōr, am said; vōcōr, am called; pŭtōr, am thought, &c.

E. An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.

(1) Doctī vīrī,
Learned men.

(2) Hī vīrī sūt doctī,
These men are learned.

F. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.

(1) Rēx Croesūs,
King Croesus.

(2) Croesūs fŭit rēx,
Croesus was king.

SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

DE CONGRUENTIA.

REGULAE QUATTUOR GENERALES.

§ 88. I. Verbum Finitum cum Nominativō Subjecti congruit
nūmērō et persōnā:

Māgister dōcēt.
Lībrī lēguntūr.

Tū dōcēs: nōs discimus
Discere est utilē.

§ 89. II. Adjectivum gēnērē, nūmērō, et cāsū congruit cum
eō, cui attribuitur:

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.
Hīrudō pullis suis orbātā quērītūr. u
Cārī sunt pārentēs; cārā est patriā.
Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.

§ 90. III. Substantivum cāsū congruit cum eō cui appō-
nītūr:

Nōs pūērī pātrēm Lollium imitābimūr.
Effodīuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum.
Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.
Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vōcātūr Iambus.

§ 91. IV. Relativum cum Antecedentē congruit gēnērē,
nūmērō, et persōnā; sēd cāsū spectāt suam clausulam:

Dēum vērērāmūr quī nōs creāvit.
Amicūs est, quem amāmus, ā quō amāmūr.
Amō tē, mātēr, quae mē amās.

DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compōsitō plūraliā congruunt:
Vēnēnō absumptī sunt Hannibāl et Philōpoemēn.

1. In diversitātē persōnārum Verbā congruunt cum Priōrē
Persōnā:

Sī tū et Tullīā vālētis, ego et Cīcērō vālēmūs.

2. În diversitate genărum Adjectivă congruunt cum Masculō
pōtiūs quam cum Fēmīnīnō :

Pătēr mīhī ēt mătēr mortūi sunt.

a. Rēbūs inānimīs attribūitūr saepē gēnūs Neutrūm :

Divitīae, dēcūs, glōriā in oculīs sitā sunt.

DE CASIBUS.

DE CASIBUS SUBJECTI ET COMPLEMENTI. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Finitī Verbī Subjectum Nōminatīvūs est :

Annī fūgiunt.

(2) Infinitīvī Subjectum in Accūsativō pōnitūr :

Constāt annōs fūgērē. | Scimūs annōs fūgērē.

§ 94. Verbă Cōpūlativă, sive Finită sive Infinitivă, Complementum plērumquē cum Subjectō congruens hābent :

Vitā est somnium.

Vitā dicitūr essē somnium.

Nēmō nascitūr sapiens.

Nēmō pōtest nasci sapiens.

Aiunt vitam essē somnium.

Constāt nēmīnem nasci sapientem.

a. Accūsativī cum Infinitivō constructiō vōcātūr Enun-
tiatiō Obliquă.

DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accūsativūs est Cāsūs Propriōris Objecti. Necnōn
limitandi vim hābēt.

I. ACCUSATIVUS OBJECTI.

§ 96. Verbă Transitivă regunt Accūsativum Objecti :

Mătēr alit pullōs.

| In primīs vērērārē Dēum.

§ 97. Intrānsitivă capiunt Accūsativum vi cognātă :

Dūram servit servitūtem.

Claudius aliam lūsit.

§ 98. Verbū quaedam, *rōgandī* praesertim ēt *dōcendī*, bīnōs admittunt Accūsātīvōs, altērum Rēi, altērum Pērsōnae :

Nunquam *divitiās dēūs rōgāvi*.
 *Quid nunc *tē littērūs dōcēam*?

§ 99. Verbū quaedam *fāciendī*, *vōcandī*, *puta vdi*, sīmiliā, bīnōs hābent Accūsātīvōs, altērum Objecti, altērum obliqui Complēmentī :

Tē faciūmus, Fortūnā, *dēam*.
Rōmūlūs urbem suā Rōmam vōcāvīt.

II. ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

§ 100. Accūsātīvūs Respectūs adjungitūr Verbīs ēt Adjectivis, praesertim apūd pōētās :

Trēmīt *artūs*. | Nūdae sunt *lācertōs*.

§ 101. Lōcūs, *Quō* itūr, in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr, idquē sīnē Praepōsitiōnē, sī vėl oppīdī nōmēn est, vėl *dōmūs*, *rūs* :

Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnem rēdīt.
Vōs itē dōmum: ēgō *rūs* ibo.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātiō Tempōris in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annōs* praefūit Athēnīs.

(2) Mensūrā Spātīi in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnīs *dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.

§ 103. Accūsātīvum rēgunt multae Praepōsitiōnēs : § 83.

<i>Antē</i> , apūd, <i>ad</i> , <i>adversūs</i> ,	<i>Prōpē</i> , <i>prop ēr</i> , <i>pēr</i> , <i>sēcundum</i> ,
<i>Circum</i> , <i>circā</i> , <i>citrā</i> , <i>cīs</i> ,	<i>Sūprā</i> , <i>versūs</i> , <i>ultrā</i> , <i>trans</i> ;
<i>Contrā</i> , <i>inīēr</i> , <i>ergā</i> , <i>extrā</i> ,	<i>Hīs supēr</i> , <i>sub ēr</i> , <i>addītō</i> ,
<i>Infra</i> , <i>intrā</i> , <i>juxtā</i> , <i>ob</i> ,	<i>Et in</i> , <i>sūb</i> , sī it mōtiō.
<i>Pēnēs</i> , <i>pōnē</i> , <i>post</i> , ēt <i>praetēr</i> ,	

DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dātīvūs est Cāsūs Rēcipientis seu Rēmōtiōris Objecti.

§ 105. I. Trājectīvā, quae sensum trājiēiunt ad Rēmōtiūs Objectum, sunt multā Adjectīvā, Adverbīa, ēt Verbā, rārīūs Substantīvā, quībūs indicātūr

Prōpinqūtās ēt *Dēmōstrātiō*,
Grātificātiō, *Dōminātiō*,
 Et his contrariā quaequē nōtiā.

§ 106. Trajectivă căpiunt Dativum, quum significantur

(1) Propinquitās ēt contrariā :

Est finitimus oratori poetā.
 Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.
 Congruenter naturae vivendum est.
 Praesentia confert praeteritis.
 Nec tamē ignorat quid distent aera lupinis.

(2) Demonstratiō ēt contrariā :

Dic mihi, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?
 Anguis Sullae apparuit immolanti.
 Haud cuiquam in dubio erat bellum imminere.

(3) Gratificatiō ēt contrariā :

Patriae sit idoneus, utilis agris.
 Turba gravis paci placidaeque inimica quiescit.
 Quod alii donat sibi destrahit.
 Lucem reddere tuae, dux bone, patriae.
 Nobis spondet fortunā salutem.
 Ne libeat tibi quod nemini licet.
 Parce pio generi.
 Succensere nefas patriae.
 Resistendum est appetitibus.

(4) Dominatiō ēt contrariā :

Sapiens, sibi qui imperiosus.
 Omnibus supplex est.
 Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.
 Mundus Deo parat, et huc obediunt maria terraeque.

a. Inter Trajectivă sunt multă Verbă compōsită cum Participiis, quales sunt

Bene, male, satis, re,
 Ad, ante, contra, in, inter, de,
 Ob, sub, super, post, et prae:

Ceteris satisfactio semper, mihi numquam.
 Siciliā quondam Italiae adhaesit.
 Gigantes bellum dis intulerunt.
 Anatum ova gallinis supponimus.

§ 107. II. Dativus ubivis adjungi potest cum notione quadam Commōdi vel Incommōdi:

Esto, ut nunc multi, dives tibi, pauper amicus.
 Numā virginēs Vestae legūt.
 Venus nupsit Vulcanō.
 Philosophiae semper vacō.

a. Huc refert Dativum Pronominis, qui vocatur ethicus:

Quid mihi Celsus agit?

b. *Sum* cum compōsitīs, praetēr *possum*, cāpīt Dātīvum :Sum *tibi* Mercūrius.Vir *mihī* sempēr ābest.c. *Est, sunt*, cum Dātīvō, *hābērē* saepē signīficant :Est *hōmīnī* cum Dēō similitūdō.Sunt *nōbīs* mītiā pōma.

d. Adjungītūr idem Dātīvūs Partīcīpīis ēt Partīcīpīālībūs Passīvae Vōcis, praesertim Gērundīvis :

Magnus civis ōbīt et formidātūs *Ōthōnī*.*Multīs* illē *bōnīs* flēbīlīs occīdit.Lēgendae sunt *pūerīs* Aesōpī fābūlae.

§ 108. III. Dātīvūs Prōpōsitī prō Complēmētō pōnitūr, adjunctō saepē Dātīvō Rēcīpīentīs :

Nīmīa fiduciā *cālūmīatī* sōlēt *essē*.*Exilio* est āvidum *marē nautīs*.

§ 109. IV. Dātīvūs Complēmētī pēr Attractiōnem pōnitūr, praesertim in nōmīnandī formūlis :

Licūt Thēmistōclī *essē ōtiōsō*.Huic ēgō diēi nōmēn *Trīnummō* faciā.

DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. Ablātīvūs est Cāsūs rērū quae circumstant ēt adverbīālī mōrē limītant actiōnem. Dēfīnīt etiā Tempūs ēt Lōcum.

§ 111. I. Ablātīvūs Causae :

Ōdērunt peccārē bōnī virtūtīs *āmōre*.*Corptis immānībūs* effērā Didō.

§ 112. II. Ablātīvūs Instrūmentī :

Hī *jūcūlis*, illī certant dēfendērē *sazīs*.

§ 113. III. Ablātīvūs Mōdī :

Injūriā fīt *dūōbūs mōdīs*, aut *vī* aut *fraudē*.

§ 114. IV. Ablātīvūs Conditiōnis :

Parē tuā cum Thāīdē collōquār.*Hómō mēū* *sententiā* prūdētissimūs est.

§ 115. V. Ablatīvūs Quālītātīs, cum Epithētō :

Quā faciēs fuit, cui dedisti symbolum ?
Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.

§ 116. VI. Ablatīvūs Rēspectūs :

Angōr animō.
Enniūs ingēntō maximūs, artē rūdis.

§ 117. VII. Ablatīvūs Prētīi :

Ēgō spem prētīō nōn ēmō.
Quōd nōn opūs est, assē cārum est.

§ 118. VIII. Ablatīvūs Mensūrae :

Longum sesquipedē, lātum pedē est.
Sōl multis partibus mājor est quam lūnā.
Tantō pessimūs omnium pōētā,
Quantō tu optimūs omnium patrōnūs.

§ 119. IX. Ablatīvūs Mātēriāe :

Cibus dōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constat.

a. Ablatīvum rēgunt: (1) Verbā fungōr, frūōr, ūtōr, vescōr, pōtōr, dignōr; (2) Adjectīvā dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, frētūs, praeditūs; (3) Substantīvā opūs, ūsūs:

(1) *Fungar vicē cōtis.*
Hannibāl, cum victōriā possēt ūti, frūi mālūt.
Rex impiūs aurō vi pōtitur. § 133.

(2) *Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōri.*

(3) *Ūbi rēs adsunt, quid opūs est verbis?*
Ūsūs est filiō viginti minīs.

b. Ex Adjectivīs et Verbīs abundandi vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, plerāquē Ablatīvum cūpiunt, multā etiam Genitīvum:

Amōr et mellē et fellē est fecundissimūs.
Nunquam animūs mōtū vācūus est.
Vis consili expers molē ruit suā.
Mancipius locuplēs egēt aeris Cappadōcum rex.
Vacārē culpā maximum est solācium.

§ 120. X. Ablatīvūs Tempōris respondēt, si rōgātūr *Quando ? Intrā quantum tempūs ? Quantō tempōrē antē vel post ?*

Hīemē omnīā bellā conquiescunt.
Quidquid est hīdūō sciēmūs.
Hōmērūs annis multis fuit antē Rōmūlum.

§ 121. XI. A. Ablatīvūs Lōcī pōnītūr sinē Praepōsitōne, cum rōgātūr, *Quā viā ?*

Ibām fortē Viā Sācrā.

B. Ablatīvūs saepē cārēt Praepōsitiōnē, cum rōgātūr *Ūbi?* maxīmē, sī oppīdi nōmēn est, vėl sī stāt cum Ēpithētō :

Philippūs *Nēāpōlī* est, Lentūlūs *Pūtēōlis*.
Tābernae *tōtā urbē* clauduntūr.

a. Oppīdōrum nōmīnā singulārīā ex Declinātiōnē primā ēt sēcundā lōcum stītiōnīs dēfiniunt pēr cāsus in *ae, ī* :

Quid *Rōmae* faciām? | Īs hābitāt *Milētī*.

b. Simīliā sunt *hūmī, dōmī, bellī, milītiāe, rūrī* :

Caesāris virtūs *dōmī milītiāeque* cognītā est.

C. Ablatīvūs oppīdi Praepōsitiōnē cārēt, cum rōgātūr *Undē?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt *Cōrīnthō*.

a. Ītā *dōmō, rūrē*. (Dē Accūsātīvō Lōcī *Quō* itūr, v. § 101.)

§ 122. XII. Ablatīvum rēgunt vāriāe Praepōsitiōnēs :

<i>A, āb, absque, cōram, dē,</i>		<i>Hīs supēr, subtēr, sub addē-</i>
<i>Pālam, clam, cum, ex, et ē,</i>		<i>mūs,</i>
<i>S.nē, tēnūs, prō, ēt prae :</i>		<i>Ēt in, dē stātū sī dīcēmūs.</i>

a. Praepōsitiōnēs ētīam compōsitae rēgun' Ablatīvum, prae-
sertim *āb, dē, ex* :

Quīntiūs *dictātūrā* sē abdīcāvīt.
Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scōpūlō*.

b. Ablatīvūs Āgentīs expētīt Praepōsitiōnem *ā, āb* :

Laudātūr āb *hīs*, culpātūr āb *illis*.

§ 123. XIII. Ablatīvūs Sēpāratiōnīs ēt Orīgīnīs ētīam sīnē Praepōsitiōnē Verbīs ēt Partīcīpiīs adjungītūr :

Cū dēs cōemptīs *saltībūs* et *dōmō*.
Pēlopē nātūs, *Tantūlō* prognātūs est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablatīvūs Rēi Compāratae :

(1) *Prō quam* cum Nōmīnātīvō :

Nīhīl est āmābīliūs *virtūtē*.
Vīliūs argentum est *aurō, virtūtībūs aurum*.

(2) *Prō quam* cum Accūsātīvō :

Pūtō mortem *dēdēcōrē lēviōrem*.
Nēmīnem *Lýcurgō* ūtīliōrem *Spartā* gēnūt.

§ 125. XV. Substantīvum cum Partīcīpiō cōalescīt in Ablatīvō, quī vōcātūr Absōlūtūs :

Rēgībūs exactīs consilēs crēatī sunt.

a. Prō Participiō saepē supplētūr altērum Substantivum
vél Adjectivum :

Nīl despērandum Teucrō *dūce* et *auspicē* Teucrō. •
Nātūs est Augustūs *consulibūs* Cicerōnē et Antonīō.
Jamquē cinis, *vivis* frātribūs, Hector erat.
Quid *dicam*, *hac* iuventūtē?

DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gēnitivūs, Cāsūs Possidentis, nōminā plērumquē
dēfinit subjectivē vél objectivē.

A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS.

§ 127. I. Gēnitivūs Auctōris et Possessōris.

Polyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.
Singulōrum opēs sunt divitiāe civitātis.
Omniā, quae *mālieris* fūerunt, *virī* fiunt.
Eā statūā dicēbātūr *Myrōnis*.

a. Interdum Gēnitivūs pendēt ā suppressā vocē :

Hectoris Andrōmachē (supplē *uxor*).
Ventum erat *ad Vestae* (supplē *templum*).

b. Gēnitivūs itā stat, ut supplēri possit

indolēs, *indivūm*,
mūnūs aut *officium* :

Cū iusvis *hōnōnis* est errārē.
Est *adōlescentis* māiorēs natū vērērī.
Tempōri cederē *hābētūr sapientis*.

§ 128. II. Gēnitivūs Quālitātis, cum Epithētō :

Ingēnū volūis pūr *ingēnū*quē pūdōris.
Claudiūs erat *sonnū brevissimū*.

a. Nōtentūr elliptici Gēnitivī, *parvī*, *māioris*, *māximī*, *magnī*,
plūris, *plūrimī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *maximī*, quibūs supplē *prētū* :

Voluptatē virtūs *māximī* facit.
Emī hortōs *tantī quantī* Pythiūs volūit.

§ 129. III. *Intērest*, *rēfert*, Gēnitivum admittunt :

Intērest omnium rectē facērē.
Rēfert compositionis quae quibūs antēpōnās.

a. Eādem prō Gēnitivis Prōnōminum ūsurpant hōs cāsūs,
mēā, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, cum *rē* congruentēs :

Et *tūā* et *mēā* intērest tē vālērē. •
Quid *nostrā* id rēfert?

§ 130. IV. A. Gēnītvūs Rēi Distribūtae Partītvīs adjungītūr, quae, quantum licēt, Gēnītvī sūmunt gēnūs :

Elephantō *beluārum* est nullā prūdentīor.
 Hōmīnī unī *animantium* luctūs est dātus.
 Nullā centum vīgintī *sūorum* amisit.
 Māior *Nērōnum* mox gravē proelium *commisit*.
Gallorum fortissimī sunt Belgae.
 Nēmō *mortalium* omnībūs hōīs sēpit.
Piscium femīnae mājorēs sunt quam *mārēs*.
 Sēquimur tē, sanctē *dōorum*.
 Hōc ad tē minimē *omnium* pertīnēt.

a. *Nostrūm, vestrūm*, Partītvā sēquuntūr :

Tē *venīrē* ūterquē *nostrūm* cūpīt.

§ 131. B. Gēnītvūs Rēi Dēmēnsae Vocabūlā Quantitātis et Neutrā Adjectīvā cōmītātūr :

Sātīs *ēloquentīae, sapientīae* parum est.
 Aliquid pristīnī *robōris* conservāt.
 Quantum *nummōrum*, tantum *fīdēi* est.

B. GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

§ 132. I. Gēnītvūs objectīvē jungītūr Substantīvīs, Adjectīvīs, aut Partīcipiīs, quībūs transītvā quaedam vīs est, praesertīm sī significant

Perītiam, cūram, dēsīdērīum,
 Vēl quidquid ērit hīs contrārīum :

Instītus est mentī *cognītiōnis* amor.
 Difficilis est cūrā *rērum aliēnarum*.
 Tempūs edax *rērum* est.
 Corpūs patiēns *inēdīae* fūit.
 Consciā mens *rectī* est.
 Impērītus *mōrum* fūit.
 Avidā est *pēriculī* virtūs.
 Animūs fūit *aliēnī* appētens, *sui* prōfūsus.

a. *Mēi, tui, sui, nostrī, vestrī*, objectīvē pōnuntūr; subjectīvē, *mēus, tuus, suus, nostrēr, vestēr* :

Niciās *tua sui* mēmōriā delectātūr.

(a) Gēnītvūs Subjectīvūs in Possessīvō lātens Gēnītvum sibi congruentem rēcipīt :

Respublicā *mēa unius* opērā salvā ērāt.
 Avēs fētus *adultos, suae ipsōrum* fidūciae permittunt.

§ 133. II. Genitivus adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis, quibus significatur

Potentia et impotentia, Damnatio, absolutio,
Criminatio, innocentia, Memoria et oblivio.

- (1) *Romani signorum potiti sunt.* § 119 a.
Ira est impotentis sui.
 (2) *Fraterni est sanguinis insons.*
Rex est injuriarum.
 (3) *Petilius furti absolutus est.*
Condemnamus hurspicem stultitiae.
 (4) *Res adversae admonent nos religionum.*
Omnēs immemorem beneficii oderunt.

a. *Memini, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor, Genitivum et Accusativum admittunt:*

Jabet mortis te meminisse Deus.
Dulcis moriens reminiscitur Argos.

§ 134. III. *Pudet, poenitet, taedet* atque *misereor*, Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo:

Miseret te aliorum: tu nec miseret nec pudet.
Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum poenitet.

§ 135. IV. *Misereor, miseresco* Genitivum capiunt; *miseror, commiseror*, Accusativum:

Arcadii, quae so, miserescit regis.
Sortem miseratur Inquam.

§ 136. V. Genitivus a poetis libere usurpatur. Sed *aeger animi, animi pendio*, similia, etiam in soluta oratione comparent.

DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vocativus extra sententiam stat vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione: § 86.

Oro te, fili (vel O fili).

§ 138. Nominativus et Accusativus in exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione:

- | | | |
|------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| (1) <i>Infandum!</i> | | <i>Eccē novā turbā!</i> |
| (2) <i>Mē miserum!</i> | | <i>En quattuor aras!</i> |

§ 139. Ita Dativus ponitur cum *ei! vae!*:

Ei misero mihi! | *Vae vicis!*

DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infinitivum stăt—

1. Substantivē, prō Nōminativō vėl Accūsativō:

(1) *Invidē* nōn cādit in sāpiētem.Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā *mōri*.(2) *Mōri* nēmō sāpiēns misērum dixērīt.

2. Praedicativē, in narrandō, prō Verbō Finitō:

Multi *sēqui*, *fūgērē*, *occidī*, *cūpi*.

3. Obliquē, cum Accūsativō Subjecti. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructiōnē Verbī vėl Adjectivī:

Sōlent diū *cōgītārē* quī *magnā* vōlunt *gērērē*.Patriae dicōris *essē* pāter.Lūdum insolentem *lūdērē* *partīnax*.

§ 141. II. Infinitivī Cāsūs sunt Gērundiā ēt Sūpinā.

1. Accūsativūs Gērundiī Praepōsitiōnībūs adjungitūr:

Ad bēnē *vīvendum* brēvē tempūs sātis ēst.

2. Gēnitivūs Gērundiī Substantivīs ēt Adjectivīs additūr:

Ars *scribēdī* discitūr. | Cūpidūs *audiēdī* est.

3. Dātivūs Gērundiī Nōminībūs et Verbīs additūr:

Pār est *dissērendō*. | Dāt ōpēram *lēgendō*.

4. Ablativūs Gērundiī causae vėl mōdi est aut Praepōsitiōnī jungitūr:

Fūgiēndō vincimūs. | *Dē pugnandō* delibērant.5. Sūpinum in *um* Accūsativūs est post Verbā mōtūs:*Lūsum* it Maecēnās, *dormitum* ēgō.a. *Irī* cum Sūpinō efficit Infinitivum Fūtūrī Passivī:Audiērāt nōn *dātum irī* filiō uxōrem sūō.6. Sūpinum in *ū* prō Ablativō Respectūs est:Foedum *dictū* est. | Nēfās *vīsū* est.§ 142. III. Infinitivum, cum Gērundiō, Participiīs, ēt Sūpinō in *um*, ēōsdem cāsūs rēgit ac Verbum Finitum:Cūpiō sātisfāctrē *rēipublicae*.Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciēdī *rēipublicae*.Ausi omnēs immānē *nēfās ausōquē* pōtiti.Ast ēgō nōn *Grāis* servitum *mātribūs* ibō.

§ 143. În Gërundîis Transîtivis ūsîtătîor est Attractîo Gërundivă; cŭjŭs constructîonîs rēgŭlă est haecce:

Trăhîtŭr Objectum în Gërundîvî cāsŭm, Gërundîvŭm în nŭmărŭm  t g n s Object :

Br t s,  n *lib rand  p tr  * est interfect s.
H  septemv r  f uerunt * gris div dendis*.

§ 144. IV. 1. N cess t tem sign fic t G rundiv  construct o imperson lis,  n Verb s p tiss mum intrans tiv s:

Bibendum est. | * undum  rit.*

a. Huic addi p test D tiv s, r ri s Abl tiv s cum * *, * b*:

Bibendum est nob s. | *V b s  undum  rit.*

b.  t siqu s  ll s c s s   Verb  r g t r:

Civ b s est   v b s consulendum.
S o cuiq e j d ci  est  tendum.
Eudox s  pin t r Chaldaeis min m  ess  cr dendum.

2. N cess t tem sign fic t attrib tiv  construct o G rundiv ,  n Verb s trans tiv s:

D  s  t  t gend s est nob s  t t mend s.
N n tangend  r t s trans liunt v d .

DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *S *, *s  s*, R flexiv  Pr n min , r f runt r  d sent nt e principal s Subjectum, m d  terti e pers n e s t:

Sent t  nim s *s * v  *s  * m v r .

a. R flexiv   d Objectum r f rr  possunt, s     r l t o n h l h b t amb g :

Sc pi nem impell t ostent t o s  .
 p b s fructum rest t o s  m.
Mors s   quemq e m n t.

DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Conjunct n s s m l  s m l b s annectunt

M r tur port s str p tumq e et str t  v  rum.
Virt s q c  rip  nec surrip  p test.
N m nem s p nt  rem p t  q am S cr tem.
Omn  s lum fort  p tr a est,  t pisc b s  quor.

§ 147. *Nē* prōhibitivā cum Imperativō Mōdō vėl cum Coniunctivō ūsurpātūr: *nēdum, ūtinam, o si, ūt* prō ūtinam. cum Coniunctivō:

Nē quā mēis estō dictiſ mōrā.

Nē culpam in mē contulērīs.

Nē dēſint ēpulis rōsae.

Mortaliā factā pēribunt.

Nēdum ſermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.

Ūtinam mīnūs vitae cūpidi fūiſſēm ūs.

O si urnam argenti fors quae mihī monstrēt.
lāt.

COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBIUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mōdus Coniunctivus vāriis ſenſibūs *pūrē* ūsurpātūr: quum *subjūgtūr* altēri Verbō, Subiunctivus appellātūr.

§ 149. Prōnōmīnā ēt Particulāe, quae obliquē interrōgant, Subiunctivum postulant:

Ipsē quis *sīt*, ūtrum *sīt*, an nōn *sīt*, id quōquē nescit.

Taliā sunt:

Quantūs, ūter, quālis, quis, quot, quōtūs, unde, ūbī, quāndō, Cūr, quōtiens, quārē, quā, quōmōdō, num, nē, ūt, an, ūtrum.

§ 150. Rēlativum *quī*, cum Particulis suis, *undē, ūbī*, cētēris, simplicī ſenſū cāpit Indicativum: sī continētūr in *ēō quum, quāmvīs, ūt*, vėl *tālīs ūt*, Subiunctivum:

Miserēt tui mē, quī hunc *fācias* inimicum tibi.

Littērās mīſi quibūs ēt *plācārem* eūm ēt *mōnērem*.

Quis est quī nōn *ſdērit* prōtervam pūeritiā?

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rēlativum vėl Coniunctiō, sī ſubordinātūr ōrātiōni obliquae vėl rē vėl pōtēstātē, Subiunctivum postulāt:

Ennius nōn censēt lūgendam *essē* mortem, quā *im-*
mortalitās conſēquātūr.

Sōcrātēs accūſātūſ est quōd *corrumpērēt* iūventutē.

α. Coniunctivō saepe ſubordinātūr Subiunctivus:

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd *recepīssēt*.

§ 152. Conjunctionum Mōdōs rēgentium Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Primā Classis est earum, quarum proprius est Subjunctivus:

(1) CONSECUTIVAE:

Ūt (*so that*)
Quā (but *that*)

(4) CONDITIONALES:

Dum
Mōdō
Dummōdō } (*provided that*)

(2) FINALES:

Ūt (*in order that*)
Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)
Quō (*in order that*)
Quōmīnūs (*but that*)

(5) CONCESSIVAE:

Licēt
Quamvis
Ūt } (*although*)

(3) CAUSALIS

Quum (*since*)

(6) COMPARATIVAE:

Tamquam
Vēlūt, ceu } (*as if*)
Quāsi, &c.

II. Alterā Classis est earum quarum proprius est Indicativus, nisi subordinentur orationi obliquae vel re vel potestati:

(1) CAUSALES:

Quōd, quā (*because*)
Quoniam (*since*)
Quandōquidem (*since*)
Siquidem (*inasmuch as*)

Simul (*as soon as*)
Postquam (*after that*)
Dum
Dōnēc
Quōdā } (*whilst, as long as*)

(2) TEMPORALES:

Quandō, quum, ubi (*when*)
Ūt (*when, since*)
Quotiens (*as often as*)

(3) CONCESSIVAE:

Quamquam (*although, however*)
Ūtūt (*however*)

III. Tertiā Classis est earum, quas aut Indicativus sequitur aut Subjunctivus, prout res aut verum aut cogitata proponitur.

(1) TEMPORALES:

Dum, dōnēc, quōdā (*until*)
Antē-quam
Prius-quam } (*before that*)

(2) CONDITIONALES ET CONCESSIVAE:

Si (*if*)
Nisi (*unless*)
Etsi, etiāsi, (*although, even if*)

§ 153. Idiōtismi sunt Latīni sērmōnis:

(i) Quum (*when*) sēquentē Subjunctivō Imperfecti vel Pluperfecti.

Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.
Dēcessit Agēsilaūs quum in portum vēnissēt.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sēquentē Indicātīvō Praesentis, ētiam in obliquā sūbordinātiōnē ēt dē rē praetērītā :

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētis fūissē in Archimēdē, qui,
dum in pulvērē quaedam dēscribīt attentius, nē patriam
quidem captam essē sensērīt?

§ 154. Conjunctiō excidit aliquandō :

Philosophiae serviās oportet (supplē *ut*).

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōema (supplē *utrum*).

Partem opēre in tantō, sineret dōlōr, Icāre, hābērēs (supplē *et*).

§ 155. Dē Consēcūtiōnē Tempōrum ēā est rēgūlā, ūt Primāriā Primāriis sūbordinantūr, Histōricā Histōricis.

Exemplā ex Syntaxi rēpētantūr.

REGULAE SUBSIDIARIAE DE CONGRUENTIA.

§ 156. (1) Adjectivā prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

Multā paupēri dēsunt, āvārō omniā.

(2) Infinitiva prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

Vivērē est vālērē.

(3) Clausulae prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

Crēdibilē est omniā consiliō fieri.

§ 157. Impersōnalis Verbī Nōminativūs nōn exstāt, nisi Infinitivum vėl Clausulā est :

Pūdēt ēum facti (i.e. pūdōr pūdēt).

Quid āgītūr? Stātūr (i.e. stātiō fīt).

Taedēt ēādē audirē mīlīens.

Magnī intērest ūt tē vīdēam.

§ 158. Vox intelligītūr ōmissā pēr Ellipsin :

Nihil bōnum nisi quōd hōrestum (bis intelligē *est*).

Perfundor gēlidā (intelligē *āquā*).

§ 159. Congrūentiā vāriātūr pēr Attractiōnem :

Nōn omnis errōr stultitiā est dicendā.

Thēbae, quod Boeōtiāe cāpūt est.

§ 160. Congrūentiā cum sensū fīt pēr Synēsīn, praesertim apūd pōētās :

Sūbēunt Tēgēaeā jūventūs . . . auxiliō tardī.

Ubi est is scēlūs, quī mē perdīdīt?

• PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

§ 161. Dē Syllābarum Quantitatē dissēri,
Et dē Mētrōrum lēgibus, Prōsōdia.

DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

• REGULAE QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractāquē Syllābā longa est.
2. Dant Dērīvātis prōpriū Primāriā tempus.
3. Praevīā vōcālī vōcālis corrīpiētur.
4. Vōcālis fit longā sītū, cui consōnā substat
 Altērā post ūnam; ut *tristis*: seu vōcē in ēādē
 J sūbīt, *x*, aut *z*; sic *Ājax*, *āxis*, *Āmāzōn*.
 a. Vōcālis dūbia est, quamvis brēvis ipsā sūā vī,
 Quam sēquitur, liquidā subjunctā, consōnā mūta:
 Sic rectē *lūgūbrē* mēlos vel *lūgūbrē* dicēs.
 b. *N* post *g* longam dat sempēr: ūt *agnūs* ēt *ignis*.
 Nec minūs *m* post *g*; *tēgmen* quod monstrāt ēt *āgmen*.

• DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

- § 163. 1. Plērāquē prōdūcēs Mōnōsyllābā, quālīā *mē*, *vēr*.
2. Prōdūcuntūr in *A*: *frustrā*, *contrāquē*, *pārāquē*.
 a. Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excipē Rectōs:
 Carmīnā Mūsā cānit; rēsōnant *Āmāryllidā* silvae.
3. *E* brēvis in fine est: sic *lēgē*, *tīmētē*, *cārērē*.
4. Prōdūcuntūr in *I*: *dicī*, *plēbīque*, *dōlīque*.
5. Prōdūcuntūr in *O*: *virgō*, *multōquē*, *juvōque*.
6. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ū*: sic *tū*, *dictūquē*, *dūūque*.
7. *Y* brēvis in fine est: sic dant *ohēlŷ*, *Tiphŷ*, *pōetae*.
8. In *C* prōdūcuntūr, ūt *illīc* (excipē *donēc*).
9. Corrīpē in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *āmāvīl*.
10. *N* brēvis in fine est: sunt testēs *Īlīōn*, *āgmēn*.

11. *R* brēvis in fine est: ceu *calcār, amābītūr, Hectōr.*
12. Prōdūcuntūr in *As*: ut *terrās* atquē *Mēnalcās.*
13. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquē *vidērēs.*
14. *Is* brēvis in fine est: ceu *dicērīs, ūtīlis, ensīs.*
 - a. Obliqui cāsūs plūrālēs excipiuntur,
 Ut *terrīs, vobīs*; etiā persōnā sēcunda
 In primō nūmērō Quartae Praesentis, ūt *audīs*:
 Composita ā *vis, sis*: *mātīs, notīsque, vēlīsque.*
15. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ōs*: ut *ventōs* atquē *sacerdōs.*
16. *Us* brēvis in fine est: *testēs ōpūs, intūs, amāmūs.*
 - a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excipe, ūt *artūs*:
 Et quis crescentis longa est pēnultimā cāsūs,
 Ut *tellūs incūsque, iuventūs* atquē *sēnectūs.*
17. *Ys* brēvis in fine est: testēs *chēlēs, Ōthrēs, Ēringēs.*
Obs. Mōs rēgīt Auctōrum tempus, sī rēgūlā dēfīt.

DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

DEFINITIONES.

- § 164. Syllabā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr Iambus . . ♩ ♩
 Quod si longā brēvī praecesserit, ille Trōchēus . . ♩ ♩
 Spondēus binis fertur consistere longis - -
 Dactylus efficitur longā brēvibusque duabus . . - ♩ ♩

DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 165. 1. Scansio, | quam vāriā con|cinnant | artē Fī|gūrae,
 Distribūit Ver|sum | prō rāti|ōnē Pē|dum.
2. A. Vōcālem elidet Sŷnāloepha in limītē vōcis,
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;
 ‘Phyllid’ am’ | ant’ alīās.
 (prō Phyllidā, amō, antē.)
3. B. Ecthipsis Vōcālem atquē m dē limītē trūdet,
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;
 ‘ Ō cū|rās hōmīn’ | Ō quant’ | est in | rēbūs in|āne.
 (prō hōmīnum, quantum.)
- a. Extrēma in dūbiis censētur syllabā versū.

§ 166. VERSUS MEMORIALES DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA.

- I. In silūis *acēr* est : *ēquūs acēr* Ōlympiā vincit. •
 Vōcē *cānēs* ; *dūcējā cānēs*, nīsi tempōrā *cānēs*.
Clāvā fērit : *clāvus* firmat ; *clāvisque* rēclūdīt.
 Ut plācēās *cōmitti*, mōrēs *cōmēs* indūcē *cōmēs*.
Cōmoedi scēnam, *cōmēdonēs* quaerītē *cēnam*.
Consulē doctōrēs ; sic tū *tibi* *consulīs* ipsī.
 Bellandī *cūpidō* nōcūit sūā saepē *cūpidō*.
 Carmīnā *dicuntur*, Dōmīnō dum templā *dicantur*.
 Solvērē *diffidit*, nōdum quī *diffidit* ense.
 Uxōrem *dūcit* vir ; *nūbit* sponsā mārītō.
Edūcāt hic cātūlōs, ut mox *edūcāt* in āprōs.
 Sī tibi non est *aes*, *ēs* inops, et pinguīā nōn *ēs*.
 Fallit saepē *frētum* plācidō nīmīs aequōrē *frētum*.
 Sōl nūbēs *fūgāt*, et *fūgīt* irrēpārābilē tempus.
 Per quod quis peccat, pēr *idem* mox plectītūr *idem*
 Difficilis *lābōr* est, cūjus sub pondērē *lābōr*.
 Frons pūeri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem linguā pūellaē.
 In campīs *lēpōrēs*, in librīs quaerē *lēpōrēs*.
 Nōn *licēt* assē *mīhi*, quī *mē* nōn assē *licētūr*.
Mālo egō *mālā* mēā bōnā quam *mālā* frangērē *mālā*.
Merx vēnit, *mercesque* vēnit quaesitā *lābōre*.
Mulcēt āmans plācidam, dum *mulget*, Silvīā vaccam.
 Fēcērīs officiūm, *mīsērīs* sī *mīsērīs* aera.
Nitērē, parvē pūer, cūpīēs quicumquē *nītēre*. •
Oblitā quae fūcō rūbēt, est *oblitā* dēcōrī.
Occidit illē dōlō turpī, quem *occidit* āmicus.
Os (ōris) mandat, sēd *os* (ossis) mandītūr ōre.
 Uxōris *pārēre* et *pārērē*, *pārārē* mārītī est.
Pārentēs pūerī faciunt gaudērē *pārentēs*.
 Lūdē *pilā* : *pilum* torquētūr : *pilā* cōlūmna est.
 • Prō rēti et rēgiōnē *plāga* est ; prō verbērē *plāga*.
 Sunt cīvēs urbis *pōpulus* ; sed *pōpulus* arbor.
Prōrā priōr, *puppis* pars postēra, āt imā *cārīna*.
 Spondet *vas* (*vādīs*), at *vās* (*vāsis*) continēt escam.
Vas cāpūt, at nummōs tantum *praes* praestāt āmicō.
 Sī cītūs irē *vēlis*, *vēlis* ōpūs omnībūs ūti est.

- II. *Fidē*, sēd antē *vidē*: quī *fīdit*, nec *hēnē vidit*,
 Fallitūr: ipsē *vidē* nē cāpiārē *fīdē*.
Consortēs fortūna ēadem, *sōctōs* lābōr idem,
 Unum *collēgās* efficit officiū:
 At cārōs faciunt schōlā, lūdus, mensā, *sōdālēs*;
 • Sulcūs āgrī *lira* est: dat *līrā* tactā *īnōdōs*.
 Nē sit *sēcūrus*; quī nōn est *tūtūs* āb hoste,
 Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mārē *litūs* hābēs.
 Sunt aetātē *sēnēs*; *vētērēs* vixērē priōrēs:
 Quod nōn est *stīmūlō* *disstīmūlō*quē quōd est.
 Annē *nōvī* quīd hābēs? Āliūm pētē: nil ēgō *nōvī*.
 Quod minīmē *rēfert* garrulūs illē *rēfert*.
 Sī quā fortē *sēdēs*, atque est tībī commōdā *sēdēs*,
 Illā *sēdē* *sēdē*; nec mīhī *cēdē* lōcō.

(ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, children, household-gods, rich^{es}, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest (or priestess), guardian, avenger, young man (or woman), infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband (or wife), hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox (or cow), deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, sice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface (or sea), marble (or sea), heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat (or fertility), carcase, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle (or world), sword, bread, fish, doorpost, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, busalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimeter.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, box.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX

ON AGREEMENT.

THE FOUR GENERAL RULES.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person :

Māgistēr dōcēt.
The master teaches.

Librī lēguntūr.
Books are read.

Tū dōcēs : nōs ādiscimūs.
Thou teachest : we learn.

Discērē est utilē.
To learn is useful.

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution :

Vīr bonūs illē bonam hanc uxōrem hābēt.
That good man has this good wife.

Hīrundo pullis suis orbātū quērītūr.
The swallow bereft of its young complains.

Cārī sunt pārentēs ; cārā est pātriā.
Dear are parents, dear is country.

Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.
Boys by learning become learned.

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition :

Nōs pūērī pātrē Lollīum imitābimūr.
We boys will imitate our father Lollius.

Effōdiuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum,
Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.

Spēs est expectātiō bonī.
Hope is the expectation of good.

Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vocātūr Iambus.
A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

Dēum vĕnĕrāmŭr qui nŏs creāvīt.

We worship God, who created us.

Āmicŭs est, quem āmāmŭs, ā quŏ āmāmŭr.

A friend is he whom we love, by whom we are loved.

Āmŏ tĕ, mātĕr, quae mĕ āmās.

I love you, mother, who love me.

ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

Vĕnĕnŏ absumpti sunt Hannibāl ĕt Philŏpoemĕn.

Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person:*

Sī tŭ ĕt Tulliā vālētis, ĕgŏ ĕt Cicerŏ vālēmŭs.

If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

Pātĕr mĭhi ĕt mātĕr mortŭi sunt.

My father and mother are dead.

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

Divĭtiae, dĕcŭs, glŏriā in ōcŭlis sita sunt.

Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.

ON CASES.

ON THE CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

[§ 93.] 1. The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

Annī fŭgiunt.

Years flee.

(2) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:.

Constat annŏs fŭgĕrĕ.

It is agreed that years flee.

Scimŭs annŏs fŭgĕrĕ.

We know that years flee.

[§ 94.] Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject:

Vitā est somnĭum.

Life is a dream.

Vitā dicĭtur eŕŕĕ somnĭum.

Life is said to be a dream.

Nĕmŏ nascĭtur ſāpiĕns.

Nobody is born wise.

Nĕmŏ pŏtest nascĭ ſāpiĕns.

Nobody can be born wise.

* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.

Aiunt vitam esse somnium.

They say that life is a dream.

Constāt nēmīnem nascī sapiētem.

It is agreed that nobody is born wise.

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation.

ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object:

Māter alit pullōs.

The mother nourishes the young ones.

In primis vērārē Dēum.

In the first place worship God.

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning:

Dūram servit servitūtem.

He serves a hard slavery.

Claudius alēam lūsit.

Claudius played hazard.

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person:

Numquam dīvitiās dēos rōgāvi.

Never asked I of the gods riches.

Quid nunc tē littērās dōcēam?

Why now should I teach you letters?

[§ 99.] Certain Verbs of *making*, *calling*, *thinking*, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the oblique Complement:

Tē facimus, Fortunā, dēam.

We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Rōmulus urbem suam Rōmam vocāvit.

Romulus called us city Rome.

II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

Trēmīt artūs.		Nūdae sunt laceriōs.
He tremble 'in his limbs.		They are bare as to the arms.

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative ; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or dōmūs (*home*), rūs (*country*) :

Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnem rēdiīt.
Regulus returned to Carthage.

Vōs itē dōmum : ēgō rūs ibō.
Go ye home : I will go into the country.

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative :

Pēriclēs quādrāgintā annōs prae fūit Āthēnīs.
Pericles led Athens forty years.

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnīs dūcēnōs pēdēs altī.
The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. I. Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion ; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries :

Est finitīmūs orātōrī pōētā.
A poet is near akin to an orator.

Nīl fūit unquam sic impār sibi.

Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.

Congrūentēr nātūrae vivendum est.
We should live agreeably to nature.

Praesentiā confēr praetēritīs
Compare present things with past.

Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aerā lūpīnis.
And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.

(2) Demonstration and its contraries:

Dīc mīhi, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?
Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?

Anguis Sullae appārūit immōlantī.
A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.

Haud cuiquam in dūbiō ērāt bellum imminērē.
It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.

(3) Gratification and its contraries:

Pātriae sīt idōnēūs, ūtilīs agrīs.
Let him be serviceable to his country, useful to the lands.

Turbā grāvis pāci plūcīdaeque inimicā quētī.
A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.

Quōd āliū dōnāt sibi dētrāhit.
What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.

Lūcem redde tūae, dux bōnē, pātriae.
Restore light to thy country, good chief.

Nōbīs spondet fortunā salūtem.
Fortune guarantees safety to us.

Nē libēāt tibi quod nēmīni licēt.
Let not (that) please thee which is lawful to no man.

Parcē piō gēvērī.
Spare a pious race.

Succensērē nēfās pātriae.
It is impious to be wroth with one's country.

Rēsistendum est appetitibūs.
We should resist our passions.

(4) Dominion and its contraries:

Sāpiens, sibi qui impēriōsus.
The wise man (is he) who (is) lord over himself.

Omnibūs supplex est.
He is suppliant to all.

Impērāt aut servit collectā pēcūniā cuique.
Amassed money sways or serves every man.

Mundūs Dēō pārēt, et huic ōbōdīunt mārīa terraequē.
The universe obeys God, and seas and lands hearken to Him.

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as *bēnē* (well), *mālē* (ill), *sātīs* (enough),

rē, ad, antē, con, in, intēr, dē, ob, sūb, sūpēr, pōst, and prae:

Cēteris sātisfāciō sempēr, mīhī numquam.
I satisfy others always, myself never.

Sicīlā quondam Itāliae adhaesit.
Sicily once was attached to Italy.

Gīgantēs bellū dīs intulērunt.
The giants waged war on the gods.

Ānātum ovā gallinīs suppōnimūs.
We place eggs of ducks under hens.

§ 107. II. A Dative can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage:

Esto, ut nunc multī, dives tibi, paupēr amicis.
Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.

Numā virginēs Vestae lēgīt.
Numa chose virgins for Vesta.

Vēnūs nupsit Vulcānō.
Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. veiled herself for Vulcan).

Philōsōphīae sempēr vācō.
I always am at leisure for philosophy.

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative:

Quid mīhī Celsūs āgit?
What (is) my Celsus doing?

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative:

Sum tibi Mercūrius.
I am to thee Mercury.

Vir mīhī sempēr ābest.
My husband is always absent from me.

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having:

Est hōmīnī cum Dēō similitūdō.
Man has a resemblance to God.

Sunt nobīs mītiā pōma.
We have mellow apples.

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives:

Magnus civīs obīt et formīdātūs Ōthōnī.
A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.

Multīs illē bonīs flēbīlīs occidit.
He died a cause of weeping to many good men.

Lēgendae sunt puerīs Aescōpī fabūlae.
The fables of Aescop are to be read by boys.

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Purpose is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added :

Nīmīā fidūciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essē.
Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.

Exiitō est āvidum mārē nautīs.
The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of naming :

Līcūt Thēmistōclī essē ōtīōsō.
It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.

Huic ēgō dīēī nōmēn Trīnummō faciām.
To this day I will give the name Trinummus.

ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause :

Ōderunt peccārē bonī virtūtīs āmōre.
The good hate to sin from love of virtue.
 Coeptīs immānībūs effērā Didō.
Didō wild with horrid purposes.

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument :

Hī iūcūlīs, illī certant dēfendērē saxīs.
These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner :

Injuriā fit dūōbūs mōdīs, aut vī aut fraudē.
Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition :

Pacē tuā cum Thāidē collōquār.
With your leave I will converse with Thais.
 Hōmō mēā sententiā prūdētissimū est.
He is a man in my opinion very prudent.

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet :

Quā faciē fuit, cui dēdistī symbolum?
Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?
 Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrendā cāpillō.
An old man with long beard and rough hair.

[§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect :

Angör ānīmō.

I am distressed in mind.

Enniūs ingēnīō maxīmūs, artē rūdiā.

Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.

[§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price :

Ēgō spem prētīō nōn ěmō.

I buy not hope at a cost.

Quōd nōn ōpūs est, assē cārum est.

What is not needful is dear at a penny.

[§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure :

Longum sesquīpēdē, lātum pēdē est.

It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.

Sōl multīs partībūs mājor est quam lūnā.

The sun is many times larger than the moon.

Tantō pessīmūs omnīum pōētā,

Quantō tu optimūs omnīum patrōnūs.

- *By so much the worst poet of all,*
As you (are) the best patron of all.

[§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter :

Cībūs ēōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constāt.

Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.

a. These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs fungōr (*perform*), frūōr (*enjoy*), ūtōr (*use*), vescōr (*eat*), pōtīōr (*get possession of*), dignōr (*deem worthy*). (2) The Adjectives dignūs (*worthy*), indignūs (*unworthy*), contentūs (*content*), frētūs (*relying*), praeditūs (*endued*). (3) The Substantives ōpūs (*need*), ūsūs (*use*):

- (1) Fungar vīcē cōtīs.

I will perform the function of a whetstone.

Hannībāl, cum victōriā possēt ūtī, frūī māliūt.

Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.

Rex impiūs aurō vī pōtītur. § 133.

The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.

- (2) Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.

A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.

- (3) Ūbī rēs adsunt, quīd ōpūs est verbīs?

When things are present, what need is there of words?

Ūsūs est filiō vīgintī mīnīs.

My son needs twenty minas.

b. Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*, *enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.

Amor ēt mellē ēt fellē est fēcundissimūs.
Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.

Nūquam animūs mōtū vācūūs est.
The mind is never void of motion.

Vis consilii expers mōlē rūit sūā.
Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.

Mancipūs locūplēs ēgēt aeris Cappādocum rex.
The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.

Vācārē culpā maximū est solāciū.
To be free from blame is a very great comfort.

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions:
When? Within what time? How long before or after?

Himē omniā bellā conquiescunt.
In winter all wars rest.

Quidquid est biduō sciēmūs.
Whatever there is we shall know in two days.

Hōmērūs annis multis fuit antē Rōmūlum.
Homer was many years before Romulus.

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

Ibam fortē Viā Sacrā.
I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

Philippūs Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteoli.
Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.

Tābernae totā urbē clauduntur.
The shops are closed in the whole city.

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae*, *i*:

Quid Rōmae faciā?		Is habitāt Miletī.
What can I do at Rome?		He dwells at Miletus.

b. Like these are hūmī (on the ground), dōmī (at home), bellī, milītia (at the wars), rūrī (in the country):

Caesaris virtūs dōmī milītiaque cognitā est.
Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.

C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

**Dēmārātūs fūgīt Cōrīnthō.*
Demaratus fled from Corinth.

a. So *dōmō* (*from home*), *rūrē* (*from the country*).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see §101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially *āb*, *dē*, *ex*:

Quīnctiūs dictātūrā sē abdīcāvīt.
Quinctius resigned the dictatorship.

Dētrūdunt nāvēs scōpūlō.
They thrust off the ships from the rock.

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition *ā*, *āb*:

Laudātūr āb hīs, culpātūr āb illīs.
He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles:

Cādēs cōemptīs saltībūs et dōmō.
You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.

Pēlōpē nātūs, Tantalō prognātūs est.
He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For *quam* (*than*) with Nominative:

Nihil est amābiliūs virtūtē.
Nothing is more amiable than virtue.

Viliūs argentum est aurō, virtūtībūs aurum.
Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.

(2) For *quam* with Accusative:

Pūtō mortem dēdēcōrē lēviōrem.
I think death easier than disgrace.

Nēmīnem Lȳcurgō ūtīliōrem Spartā gēnūt.
Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute:

Rēgībūs exactīs consūlēs crēatī sunt.
Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.

a. For the Participle is often substituted another Substantive, or an Adjective:

Nīl despērandū Teucrō dūce ēt auspīcē Teucrō.
*There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer
 for omen-giver.*

Nātū^s est Augustū^s consūlībū^s Cīcērōnē^s et Antōnīō^s.
Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.

Jamquē cīnis, vivīs frātrībū^s, Hectōr erat.
And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.

Quīd dicam, hāc jūventūtē?
What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?

ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns subjectively or objectively.

A. THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor:

Pōlyclētū signā plānē perfectā sunt.
Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.

Singulōrum ōpēs sunt divītiæ civitātis.
The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.

Omniā, quæ muliērīs fūerunt, virī fiunt.
All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.

Ēā stātūā dicēbātūr essē Mýrōnīs.
That statue was said to be Myro's.

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectōrīs Andrōmāchē (supplē uxōr).
Hector's Andromache (supply wife).

Ventum ērāt ad Vestæ (supplē templum).
We had come to Vesta's (supply temple).

b. A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, or duty, can be supplied.

Cūjusvis hōmīnīs est errārē.
It is in any man's nature to err.

Est adōlescentīs mājōrēs natū vērērī.
The young man's duty is to reverence elders.

Tempōrī cēdērē hābētūr sāpientīs.
To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.

[§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

Ingenūi vultūs pūēr ingenūiquē pudōris.

A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.

Claudīus ērāt somnī brevissimī.

Claudius was (a man) of very brief slumber.

a. The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: parvī (of small worth), minōris (of less value), minimī (of very little worth), magnī (of great price), plurīs (of more value), plurimī, (of high value), tantī (of so great price), quantī (of what price), maximī (of very great price), to which supply prētīi:

Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit.

Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.

Emīit hortōs tantī quantī Pythiūs voluit.

He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.

[§ 129.] III. Interest (it imports), refert (it concerns), admit a Genitive:

Intērest omnium rectē facērē.

It imports all men to act rightly.

Rēfērt cōpōsitiōnis quae quibūs antēpōrās.

It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.

a. The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use these Cases, mēū, tūā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, agreeing with rē:

Et tūā et mēū intērest tē valērē.

It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.

Quid nostrā id refert?

What (does) that concern us?

[§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

Elēphantō belūdrum est nullā prūdentior.

Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.

Hōmīni ūnī animantium luctus est dātus.

To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.

Sullā centum viginti suorum amisit.

Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.

Māior Nērdōum mox gravē proelium commisit.

The elder of the Norgs ere long fought a severe battle.

Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae.

The Belgae are bravest of the Gauls.

Nēmō mortāliū omnībūs hōīs sāpit.

Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.

Piscīū fēmīnae māiōrēs sunt quam mārēs.

Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.

Sēquimur tē, sanctē dēūm.

We follow thee, holy one of gods.

Hōc ad tē minimē omnīū pertinet.

This belongs to thee least of all men.

a. Nostrūm (of us), vestrūm (of you), follow Partitives:

Tē vēnīrē ūterquē nostrūm cūpīt.

Each of us desires that you come.

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives:

Sctīs ēlōquentīae, sāpientīae pārūm est.

He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.

Āliquīd pristīnī rōbōrīs conservāt.

He keeps something of his old strength.

Quantum nummōrūm, tantum fidēi est.

There is the same amount of credit as of money

B. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify *skill, care, desire, or* whatever is contrary to these.

Insītūs est mentī cognitiōnīs amor.

Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.

Difficilis est cūrā rērum āliēnārūm.

Hard is the care of other people's affairs.

Tempūs ēdax rērum est.

Time is consumer of things.

Corpus patiēns inēdiāe fuit.

His body was capable of enduring inanition.

Consciā mens rectī est.

The mind is conscious of rectitude.

Impēritūs mōrum fuit.

He was unskilled in manners.

Āvidā est periculī virtūs.

Valour is greedy of danger.

Animūs fuit āliēnī appētens, sūī profūsus.

His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), lavish of his own

a. Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively; mēūs, tūūs, sūūs, nostrēr, vestēr, subjectively:

Niciās tūā sūi mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.

(a) A_o Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it:

Respublica mēū ūniūs ōpērā salvā ērāt.

The state was saved by my single exertion.

Āvēs fētūs ādultōs sūae ipsōrum fīdūciāe permittunt.

Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power* and *impotence*, *inculpation*, *innocence*, *condemnation*, *acquittal*, *memory* and *forgetfulness*:

(1) Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.

The Romans gained the standards.

Irā est impōtens sūi.

Anger is incapable of self-restraint.

(2) Frāternī est sanguīnis insons.

He is innocent of a brother's blood.

Rēūs est injūriārum.

He is arraigned of injurious acts.

(3) Pētillīūs furtī absōlūtūs est.

Petilius was acquitted of theft.

Condemnāmūs hāruspicēs stultitiāe.

We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of folly.

(4) Rēs adversae admōnēt nōs religiōnum.

Adversity reminds us of religious duties.

Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiī cōderunt.

All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.

a. Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcōrdōr (*I remember*), oblīviscōr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative:

Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.

God bids thee remember death.

Dulcēs mōriēns rēmīniscitūr Argōs.

Dying he remembers sweet Argos.

[§ 134.] III. Pīgēt (*it irks*), pūdēt (*it shames*), paenītēt (*it repents*), taedēt (*it disgusts*), and mīserēt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative:

Mīserēt tē āliōrum: tūi nec mīserēt nec pūdet.

Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.

Ūs partim scēlērū, partim ineptiārū paenītēt.

They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.

[§ 135.] IV. *Misĕrĕŕ, misĕrescŕ* (*I pity*), take a Genitive; *misĕrŕ, commisĕrŕ* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative:

Arcădĭi, quaeŕ, misĕrescitĕ rĕgis.

Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.

Sorĕm misĕrătŭr ĭnĭquam.

He compassions the unjust fate.

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive is freely used by poets. But *aegĕr ĭnĭmĭ* (*sick at heart*), *ĭnĭmĭ pendĕŕ* (*I waver in mind*), and the like, appear even in prose.

ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

Ŏrŕ tĕ, fili (vĕl O fili).

I pray thee, son (or, O son).

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

(1) *Infandum!*

Unutterable!

Eccĕ nŕvă turbă!

Lo, a new disturbance!

(2) *Mĕ misĕrum!*

Wretched me!

Ėn quattuŕ arĕs!

Lo, four altars!

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with *hei* (*alas!*), *vae* (*woe!*),

Ei misĕrŕ mĭhi!

Alas wretched me!

Vae victĭs!

Woe to the vanquished!

ON THE VERB INFINITIVE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative:

(1) *Invidĕrĕ nŕn cădit ĭn săpĭentem.*

Envyng happens not to a wise man.

Dulce et dĕcŕum est prĕ pătĕriă mŕrĕ.

Dying for country is sweet and comely.

(2) *Mŕrĕ pĕmŕ săpĭens misĕrum dixĕrit.*

No wise man will call it miserable to die.

2. Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb :

Multi sēquī, fugērē, occidī, cāpī.

Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.

3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective :

Solent diū cōgītārē quī magnā vōlunt gērērē.

They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things.

Pātriae dicērīs essē pāter.

Thou art said to be father of thy country.

Lūdum insolentem lūdērē pertināx.

Persisting to play an insolent game.

[§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions :

Ad bēnē vīvendū brēvē tempūs sātīs est.

For living well a short time is sufficient.

2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives :^t

Ars scrībendī discītūr.

The art of writing is learnt.

Cūpidūs audiendī est.

He is desirous of hearing.

3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs :

Pār est dissērendō.

He is competent for arguing.

Dāt ōpēram lēgendō.

He pays attention to reading.

4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition :

Fūgiendō vincimūs.

We conquer by flying.

Dē pugnandō delībērant.

They deliberate about fighting.

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion :

Lūsum it Maccēlās, dormītum ēgō.

Mæcenās goes to play, I to sleep.

- a. *Irī* with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive :

Audiērāt nōn dātum īrī filiō uxōrem suō.

He had heard (that there was) no intention (non īrī) to give a wife to his son.

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect :

Foedum dictū est.

It is horrible to state.

Nřfās visū est.

It is impious to view.

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite:

Cūpiō sātisfacēre rēpublicae.

I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.

Cūpidūs sum sātisfaciendi rēpublicae.

I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.

Ausi omnes immānē nēfās ausōque pōtiti.

All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.

Ast ego non Graiis servitum mātribus ibō.

But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerundive, the Gerundive to the Number and Gender of the Object:

Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus.

Brutus was slain in freeing his country.

Hi septemviri fuerunt agris dividendis.

These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs:

Bibendum est.

One must drink.

Ēundum erit.

One will (have) to go.

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā*, *ab*:

Bibendum est nobis.

We must drink.

Vobis ēundum erit.

You will (have) to go.

b. And any other Case governed by the Verb:

Civibus est ā vobis consulendum.

You must consult for the citizens.

Suo cuique iudicio est utendum.

Each must use his own judgment.

Eudoxus opinatur Chaldaeis minime esse credendum.

Eudorus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs:

Deum et diligendus est nobis et timendus.

God is both to be loved and feared by us.

Non tangenda rates transiliunt. yādā.

Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) not be meddled with.

ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] Sē, sūs, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person :

Sentit ānīmūs sē vī sūā mōvērī.

The mind feels (that) it is moved by its own force.

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity :

Scipiōnem impellit ostentātiō sū.

Ostentation of self sways Scipio.

Āpībūs fructum restitūō sūm.

I restore to the bees their produce.

Mors sūā quemquē mānet.

His death awaits every man.

ON SOME PARTICLES

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like :

Miratur portās strēpitumquē et strātā viārum.

He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.

Virtūs nec ēripī nec surripī pōtest.

Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.

Nēmīnem sapiētiōrem putō quam Sōcrātem.

I deem no man wiser than Socrates.

Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscibūs aequor.

Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.

[§ 147.] Nē prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: nēdum (*not to say, much less*), ūtinam (*O that*), ō sī, ūt for ūtinam, with a Conjunctive :

Nē quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.

Let there be no delay to my orders.

Nē culpam in mē contulērīs.

Lay not the fault on me.

Nē dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.

And (let) roses not be wanting to the feast.

Mortālīā factā pēribunt,
Nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.
Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popularity of literary works stand permanent.
 Ūtinam minūs vitae cūpidi fāissēmūs.
Would that we had been less fond of life,
 O sī urnam argenti fors quae mīhi monstrēt!
O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!
 Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.
I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.

OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which question indirectly, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.
He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.

Such Interrogatives are:

Quantūs (<i>how great</i>)	Cūr (<i>why</i>)
Ūtēr (<i>which of two</i>)	Quōtiēns (<i>how often</i>)
Quālis (<i>of what sort</i>)	Quārē (<i>wherefore</i>)
Quis (<i>who or what</i>)	Quam (<i>how</i>)
Quōt (<i>how many</i>)	Quōmōdō (<i>how</i>)
Quōtūs (<i>which, in order of number</i>)	Num, -nē (<i>whether</i>)
Undē (<i>whence</i>)	Ūt (<i>how</i>)
Ūbī (<i>where or when</i>)	An, ūtrum (<i>whether</i>).
Quandō (<i>when</i>)	

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ūbī (*where, when, &c.*), undē (*whence*), &c., in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *once, although, in order that, or such that*, a Subjunctive:

Misērēt tūi mē, quī hunc fācias inimicum tibi.
I pity you, since you make this man your foe.

Littērās mīi quibūs ēt placārem eūm ēt mōnērem.
I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.

Quis est quī nōn odērīt prōterram pūeritiam?
Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?

Dignā res est ūbī nervōs intendās.
The matter is worthy (that) you devote your energies to it.

[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennīus nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortālītās consēquātūr.

Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.

Sōcratēs accūsātūs est quōd corrūmpērēt iuventūtem.

Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.

a. A Conjunctive Mood often has a Subjunctive in subordination to it.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd rēcēpissēt.

All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing * Moods there are three Classes :

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate :

(1) CONSECUTIVE :

Ūt (*so that*)
Quin (*but that*)

(4) CONDITIONAL :

Dum
Mōdō
Dummōdō } (*provided that*)

(2) FINAL :

Ūt (*in order that*)
Nē (*lest, that . . .*)
Quō (*in order that*)
Quōminūs (*but that*)

(5) CONCESSIVE :

Licēt
Quamvis
Ūt } (*although*)

(3) CAUSAL :

Quum (*since*)

(6) COMPARATIVE :

Tamquam
Vēlūt, ceu
Quāsi, &c. } (*as if*)

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual.

(1) CAUSAL :

Quōd, quīā (*because*)
Quōniām (*since*)
Quandōquidem (*since*)
Siquidem (*inasmuch as*)

Simul (*as soon as*)
Post-quam (*after that*)
Dum
Dōnēc
Quōdā } (*whilst, as long as*)

(2) TEMPORAL :

Quandō, quum, ubi (*when*)
Ūt (*when, since*)
Quōtīēs (*as often as*)

(3) CONCESSIVE :

Quamquam (*although, however*)
Ūtāt (*however*)

* When we speak of Moods being governed by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions ; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, and Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.

III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter expressed is fact or contingency.

(1) TEMPORAL:

Dum, dōnēc, q̄rōād (until)
Antē-quam } (before that)
Prius-quam }

(2) CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE:

Si (if)
Nisi (unless)
Etsi, ētiam sī (although, even if)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are:

(1) Quum (when) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnīs essem, audīebam frēquentēr.
I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.

Dēcessit Agēsilaūs quum in portum vēnissēt.
Agesilaus died, when he had come into harbour.

(2) Dum (whilst), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance:

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētis fūissē in Archimēdē, quī,
dum in pulvērē quaedam describit attentius, nē patriam
quidē captam essē sensērīt?

What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Philōsōphiāe serviās oportēt.

It behoves (that you) be a servant to philosophy (supply ut).

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōēma.

I will inquire (whether) it be a true poem or not (supply utrum).

Partem opēre in tantō, sin ēret dōlōr, Icāre, hābērēs.

Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply si).

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.

SUPPLEMENTARY RULES OF AGREEMENT.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives:

Multę paupĕrĭ dĕsunt, āvārō omnĭā.• *Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.*

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives:

*Vivĕrĕ est vālĕrĕ.**To live is to be well.*

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives:

*Crĕdĭbĭlĕ est omnĭā consĭlĭō fiĕrĭ.**It is probable that all things happen by design.*

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause:

*Pūdĕt ĕum factĭ (i. e. pūdōr pūdet).**He is ashamed of the act.**Quĭd agĭtūr? Stātūr (i. e. stātĭō fit).**What is being done? There is a stand-still.**Taedĕt ĕādem audirĕ mĭliĕns.**To hear the same things a thousand time is tedious.**Magnĭ intĕrest ūt tĕ vĭdĕam.**It is of great importance that I should see you.*

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis:

*Nihil bōnum nĭsĭ quōd hōnestum (understand est twice).**Nothing is good but what is morally right.**Pĕrfundor gĕlĭdā (understand āquā).**I bathe myself with cold water.*

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction:

*Nōn omnĭs errōr stultitiā est dicendā.**Not every error must be called folly.**Thēbae, quōd Boeōtiāe cāp ūt est.**Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry:

*Sūbĕunt Tĕgĕaeā jūventūs auxiliō tardī.**The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.**Ūbi es. is scĕlūs, quī mē perdĭdit?*• *Where is that villain, who has ruined me?*

OUTLINE OF PROSODY.

[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the law of metre.

ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- [§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.
 2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.
 3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.
 4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, as *tristis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ajax*, *axis*, *Amāzon*.
 5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute consonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly (*lugubre* melos) a mournful melody, or *lugubre*.
a. *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *agnus* and *ignis*: and like wise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

- [§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.
 2. Words ending in *A* are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.
a. Except Accusative and Nominative Cases. (*Musā*) the Muse sings (*carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amaryllidū*) *Amaryllis*.
 3. *E* final is short: as *legē*, *timetē*, *carerē*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: *heū*; *cōigo*=*cōgo*. Except *prae* before a vowel, as *praeunte*.

2. Examples: *pōmum*, *pōmarium*; *sālix*, *sālicetum*. Exceptions are numerous, as *hōmo*, *hūmanus*; *nūbo*, *pronūba*; *nōtus*, *cognitus*.

3. Examples: *principium*, *prōhio*. (*H* is regarded as a breathing only, and not taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; *Chāonis*, *Aenēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enyo*. Some Latin; *diū*, *Pompēi*; *auiā*, *ēheu*; *fio* (except before *er*, as *fieri*). Doubtful: *fidē*, *Dīana*; Gen. in *ius*; *illius*.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in *l*, *b*, *d*, *t*, *vēl*, *sūb*, *q̄*, *ē*, *stēt*. Also *ēs* and its compounds, *quēs*; *quē*, *vē*, *nē* interrogative; *nēc*, *ān*, *in*, *p̄r*, *tēr*, *vīr*, *cōr*, *os* (*ossis*), *fāc*, *fēr*, *bis*, *is*, *cis*, *quis*.

2. *a.* Most Vocatives in *ā* are short; *Orestā*; also *eiā*, *itā*, *quiā*.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as *Thisbē*, *speciē*; their Derivatives; *quarē*, *hodīē*; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj.; *audē* (but *cavē* is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; *miserē*; also *fermē*, *ferē*, *chē*, *fāmē*.

4. Words in I are long; *dici* and *plebī* and *dotī*.
5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.
6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.
7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chelŷ*, *Tiphŷ*.
8. Words in C are long, as *illīc*, except *donēc*.
9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibāl*, *ibūd*, *amavit*.
10. N final is short, *liōn*, *agmēn*, are instances.
11. R final is short; as *calcūr*, *amabitūr*, *Hectōr*.
12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.
13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.
14. Is final is short; as *diceris*, *utilis*, *ensis*.
 - a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrīs*, *vobīs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audīs*; the compounds of *vīs*, *sīs*; *malīs*, *nolīs*, and *velīs*.
15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.
16. Us final is short: *opūs*, *intūs*, *amamūs*, are instances.
 - a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artūs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellūs* and *incūs*, *juventūs* and *senectūs*.
17. Ys final is short: *chelŷs*, *Othrŷs*, *Erinŷs*, are instances.
 - a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

- [§ 164.] A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (˘ -): but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (- ˘):
 A Spondee will consist of two long syllables (- -);
 A Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (- ˘ ˘).

ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

- [§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives; *Thyrsidī*, *Chlorī*; also *sicubī*, *necubī*, *nisl*, *quasi*. But *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, are doubtful.
5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates. Oblique Cases, and Adverbs in O derived from Adjectives, have o long, except *citō*, *Modō* and its Compounds, *egō*, *duō*, *octō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*, have o short: *immō*, *putō*, doubtful.
10. Exceptions: many Greek words; *Hymēn*, *Ammōn*.
11. Exceptions: many Greek words; *cratēr*, *nēr*.
12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension; *Arcās*, *lampadās*. Also *anās*, a *cluck*.
13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; *Troadēs*: also *penēs*; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as *segēs*.
14. a. *Gratis*, *foris*, are long: and Substantives which increase long; *Samnis*, *Simois*. Ris of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as *feceris*.
15. Some Greek words in os (ος) are short; *Argūs*, *epōs*.
16. a. Some words from the Greek in ūs are long; *Sapphūs*, *Melampūs*, *Iesūs*.

2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' ant' alias*, for *Phyllida amo ante alias*.

3. Ecthipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O furas homin'*, *O quant' est in rebus inane*, for *hominum, quantum*.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. We fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but *poplar* is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

APPENDIX I.

I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

I. NOUNS.

A. Substantives, §§ 16-25:—

FIRST DECLENSION, § 18.

- a.* The old Genitive ending **as** remains in *familias*:
Pater- (mater-) *familias*, *father (mother) of a family*.
b. The Gen. in **ai** is found in epic and comic poetry: *aquai*.
c. Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of *arum*, are (1) *Patronymics*: *Aeneades*; (2) Some names of people, *Lapitha*; (3) *Compounds* with *-cola*, *-gena*; *caelicola*, *terrigena*; (4) *Drachma*, *amphora*.
d. Nouns like *Dea*, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **abus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us*: *filia*, *nata*, *liberta*, *mula*, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION, § 19.

- a.* Nouns declined like *filius* are, *genius*, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names, in *ius*; *Mercurius*, *Laelius*.
b. The Gen. *ii* was often contracted into **i**. Virgil and Horace use *i*; Ovid writes *ii*.
c. The Gen. Pl. in **um** for *orum* appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: *nummus*, *sestertius*, *medimnus*, *modius*, *talentum*, *faber*. So, *denum talentum*; *praefectus fabrum*. (2) Some names of people: *Argivus*, *Danaus*. Poets often use it in words of short penult; *virum* for *virorum*.
d. Greek nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or *um*: *Delos*; Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like *bellum* in all but N. V. A. Sing.; *Pelion*.
e. *Pelagus*, *sea*, *virus*, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. *Vulgus*, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has *-um* or *-us* in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

THIRD DECLENSION, §§ 20-22.

1. Variant Consonant Nouns:

Old man, Swine, Ox or cow, Jupiter,

	m.	c.	c.	m.	
N. V.	Senex	Sus	Bos	Juppiter	
Acc.	Sen-	Su-	Boy-	Jov-	em
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	Boy-	Jov-	is
Dat.	Sen-	Su-	Boy-	Jov-	i
Abl.	Sen-	Su-	Boy-	Jov-	ē
N. V. A.	Sen-	Su-	Boy-	—	ēs
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	—	—	um
D. Abl.	Sen-	—	—	—	ibus

Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. *subus* or *subūs*; **bos** has Gen. Pl. *boum*
Dat. Abl. *bōbus* or *būbus*.

Iter, *journey*, n.; Gen. *itiner-is*.

Jecur, *liver*, n.; Gen. *jecōris* or *jecinōr-is*.

Supellex, *furniture*, f.; Acc. *supellectilem*.

Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are:
the syncopated words, *pater, mater, frater, accipiter*;
canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

2. Variant I-Nouns:

Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like *dens*, are: (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except *lynx*; (2) the words, *glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix*, with *faux* and *vis*.

Nouns like *tussis* are: *sitis, thirst*, f.; *amussis, carpenter's rule*, f.; with a few more. Also names of rivers, *Tiberis, Tiber*, m.; of towns, *Hispalis, Seville*, f.

Like *clavis*: *classis, fleet*, f.; *febris, fever*; *messis, harvest*;

• *navis, ship*, f.; *puppis, stern*, f., and a few others. *Restis, rope*, f., Abl. *ē*; *securis, axe*, f., Abl. *ī* only.

Like *canalis* are Adjectival Nouns: *aedilis, m*.

Like *imber* are: *ūter, bladder*; *venter, belly*. m.; *linter, boat*, f.

3. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in *ā* or *em*; Acc. Plur. usually in *ās*:

Gigas, <i>giant</i> , m.	gigant-	ā, em	ās
Lampas, <i>torch</i> , f.	lampād-	ā, em	ās
Cratēr, <i>bowl</i> , m.	eratēr-	ā, em	ās
Aēr, <i>air</i> , m.	aēr-	ā, em	ās
So, Naïs, <i>Naiad</i> , f.	Naïd-	ā, em	ās
• Herōs, <i>hero</i> , m.	herō-	ā, em	ās
Erinys, <i>fury</i> , f.	Eriny-	ā	ās

Greek Nouns in *īs, ŷs*, have Voc *ī, ŷ*: *Parī, Naī, Erinŷ*.

Greek I-Nouns have Nom. *īs*, f.; Voc. *ī*; Acc. *in* or *im*; Gen. *ēds*;
Dat. Abl. *ī*: *poēsis, poetry*.

4. The following are various Masculine forms of Proper Names:

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
1. <i>ēūs</i>	<i>eu</i>	<i>ēum, ēā</i>	<i>ēī, ēōs</i>	<i>ēī, ēī, ēō</i>	<i>ēō</i>
2. <i>ēs, ēūs</i>	<i>ē, eu</i>	<i>em, ēn, čā</i>	<i>īs, ēī, ī, ēōs</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ē</i>
3. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēs, es</i>	<i>em, ēn</i>	<i>īs, ī</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ē, ē</i>
4. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>em, ēā</i>	<i>īs, ī</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ē</i>
5. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ē, es</i>	<i>em, ēn, ētā</i>	<i>īs, ētīs</i>	<i>ī, ētī</i>	<i>ē, ētē</i>

Examples.—1. *Orpheus, Peleus*. 2. *Achilles, Ulixes (ēūs)*. 3. *So-crates, Thucydides*. 4. *Eteocles, Pericles*. 5. *Chremes, Thales*.

FOURTH DECLENSION, § 23.

The Nouns which prefer *ūbus* to *ibūs* in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in *cus*: *arcus, bow*; also, *tribus, tribe*; *partus, birth*; *artus (Plur.), limbs*; and *verū, spit*, N.

• Poets often contract *ui* into *ū*: *Parce metu*.—*Verg.*

FIFTH DECLENSION, § 24.

Dies, day, and *res, thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.

Poets contract *ei* into *ē*: *Constantis juvenem fide—Hor.*

Fidei generally has *e* short: *so rei, spei.*

Respublica, commonwealth, declines both elements: Acc. *rempublicam*, Gen. *republicae*, etc. 'So *jusjurandum, oath*; 'Gen. *jurisjurandi*, etc.

ANOMALOUS SUBSTANTIVES, § 25.

The chief Nouns, Plural only, besides those named (2) are:

DECL. 1. <i>f.</i>	<i>Deliciae, delight</i>	<i>Nonae, Nones</i>
	<i>Epulae, feast</i>	<i>Nundinae, market-day</i>
	<i>Exsequiae, funeral rites</i>	<i>Nuptiae, bridal</i>
	<i>Feriae, holidays</i>	<i>Reliquiae, remnant</i>
	<i>Insidiae, ambush</i>	<i>Tenebrae, darkness</i>
	<i>Kalendae, Calends</i>	<i>Athenae, Athens</i>
	<i>Minae, threats</i>	<i>Thebae, Thebes</i>
DECL. 2.	<i>Fasti, annals</i>	<i>Delphi</i>
		<i>Gabii</i>
DECL. 3.	<i>Fores, door, f.</i>	<i>Moenia, town walls, n.</i>
DECL. 4.	<i>Artus, limbs, m.</i>	<i>Idus, Ides, f.</i>

The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural (3) are:

DECL. 1.	<i>Copia, plenty, f.</i>	<i>Copiae, forces</i>
DECL. 2.	<i>Lūdus, play, m.</i>	<i>Ludi, public games</i>
DECL. 3.	<i>Aedes, temple, f.</i>	<i>Aedes, house</i>

Add to Defective Nouns:

Mane, morning, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

Fas, right; *nefas, wrong*; *instar, likeness*; *nihil, nothing*; *necesso, necessity*; *opus, need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

Fors, chance; Abl. S. *forte, by chance*.

Sponte, by one's own choice.

B. Adjectives, §§ 32-37:—

§ 33. *a.* Like *melior* are declined Comparatives. *Vetus (veter-), ancient*, has the same endings as *melior* in the Oblique Cases and Plural.

Like *felix*, Adjectives in *-ax, ix, ox, ux*.

Like *ingens*, Adjectives in *-ns, rs, ex*; also *locuples (locuplēt-), wealthy*; *par (pār-)* with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. *i*, when used as Epithets; otherwise *ē*: with occasional exception.

Like *acer*, Adjectives of the Second Class in *-cer, -ster*; also *celeber, renowned*; *saluber, healthful*.

β. Abl. S. *i*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Plur. Nom. Acc.: *inop-s, destitute*; *vigil, wakeful*; *memor, mindful*; *degener, degenerate*; *uber, fruitful*.

γ. Abl. S. *ē*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl.: *ales (alit-), winged*; *dives (divit-), rich*; *sospes (sospit-), safe*; *superstes (superstit-), surviving*; *compos (compot-), possessing*; *impos (impot-), not possessing*; *deseres (desid-, resid-), inactive*; *pauper, poor*; *puer, of age*.

G. Pronouns, § 38:—

The suffixes -mēt, -tē, -ptē, -cē, strengthen various Pronouns.

Mēt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases (except Gen. Plur.): egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu (except Nom. Sing.): vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: sibimet; 4. to the cases of suus: suamet facta.

Tē is joined to tu: tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.

Ptē is joined especially to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

Cē is joined to the Demonstratives: huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

	Sing.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istic	istaec	istuc	istice	istaece	istace
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istuc	istosce	istasce	istace
Gen.	istiusce, etc.			istorumce, etc.		

From the Possessives noster, vester, cujus, are derived:

Nostr-as (āt-), of our country. | Cuj-as (āt-), of what country.
Vestr-as (āt-), of your country.

D. Derived Nouns.

1, Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing *ūs* into *ā*: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freed-man*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, etc.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns verbal, in *tōr* often have a Feminine *trix*: ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, victrix. Some in *trix* are found as Adjectives: arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidicen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibicen, *flute-player* (3), tibi-cina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Laco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Thraeissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3), Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son-in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐπικόιννα): passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, femina: vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.

2. **Deminutives** are **Derived Nouns** which express smallness.

Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

M.	F.	N.
1. -ŭlus	-ŭla	-ŭlum
2. -ŏlus	-ŏla	-ŏlum
3. -ellus	-ella	-ellum
4. -cŭlus	-cŭla	-cŭlum
1. riv-ulus, <i>streamlet</i>	cist-ula, <i>small chest</i>	scut-ulum, <i>small shield</i>
2. fili-olus, <i>little son</i>	capre-ola, <i>young roe</i>	savi-olum, <i>kiss</i>
3. ag-ellus, <i>small field</i>	pat-ella, <i>saucer</i>	lab-ellum, <i>lip</i>
4. flos-culus, <i>floweret</i>	parti-cula, <i>particle</i>	munus-culum, <i>little present</i>

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. **Patronymics** are **Personal Names**, derived from a parent or ancestor.

Masc.

ādēs,	Aeneādes,	son of	Aeneas.
īdēs,	Tyndarīdes	„	Tyndarus.
īdēs,	Nelēides	„	Neleus.
īādēs	Thestiādes	„	Thestius.

Fem.

īs,	Tyndaris,	daughter of	Tyndarus.
ēis,	Nelēis,	„	Neleus.
āsp	Thestias,	„	Thestias.

And some others.

II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

A. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A, ab =

- A before *m, v*: amitto, avoco.
- A b before *c, t*: abscedo, absterreo.
- A s before *p*: asporto.
- A u before *f*: aufero, aufugio. But afui, afore.
- A b before other letters: abeo, abdo.

(2) A d remains before *l, d, h, j, m, v*, and vowels: adbibo, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.
becomes a- before *gn, sc, sp*: agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.
is assimilated before other letters: affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for cum), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p, b, m*: comparo, combibo, immitto.
are assimilated before *l, r*: colludo, irruo.
Con- becomes co- before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: coeo, coheres cognosco. So ignosco. Note comēdo, comburo.
Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: confero, induco.

(4) O b, s u b, are assimilated before *c, g, p, f*: occurro, oppono, sump-
pono. So summoveo.
Except suscipio, uscito, suspendo, suspicio.
They remain before other letters.
Except sustineo, sustollo, sustuli, surripio.
Note omitto, ostendo.

- (5) *E, ex*, are assimilated before *f*: *effero*.
Ex before vowels, *h, c, q, p, s, t*: *exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, exstruo,* extraho*.
E before others: *educō, evoco*.
- (6) *Trāns* becomes *tra* before *d, j, n*: *trado, trajiō, trano*.
Tran- before *s*: *transcribo*.
- (7) *Dis-* is assimilated before *f*: *differo*.
 Remains before gutturals, labials, *t, j*, and *s* with vowels: *discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero*. But *di-judico*.
Di- before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: *distingo, diruo*.
 Not used before vowels. But *dir-ibeo* for *dis-hibeo*, *dir-imo* for *dis-imo*.
- (8) *Re-se-* add *d* in *reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redīmo, redoleo, seditio*.

B. VOWEL-CHANGE IN COMPOSITION.

- a. Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds:
 (1) *damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare*;
 (2) *arcēre*; (3) *-candēre, carpēre, scandēre, spargēre, gradi, pati*; (4) *farcēre, partiri*.
- b. Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) *calcare, saltare*;
 (3) *quatēre, (-cutēre, -cussi, -cussum)*.
- c. Verbs weakening *ae* into *i* in all forms: (3) *caedēre (-cīdi, -cīsum), laedēre (-līdēre, -līsi, -līsum), quaerēre (-quīrēre, -quī-sīvi, -quisitum)*.
- d. Verb weakening *au* into *ū* in all forms: (3) *claudēre (-clūdēre, -clūsi, -clūsum)*.
- e. Verb weakening *au* into *ō* in all forms: (3) *plaudēre (-plōdēre, -plōsi, -plōsum)*. Exc. *applaudēre*.
- f. Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) *habēre, latēre, placēre, tacēre*; (3) *sapēre, statuēre*. Exc. *complacēre, perplacēre*.
- g. Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—
 (a) *a × i, e, a*: (3) *agēre (-igēre, -ēgi, -actum), frangēre (-fringēre, -frēgi, -fractum), pangēre (-pingēre, -pēgi, -pactum)*. Exc. *circum-, peragere (-ēgi, -actum), cogere (co-ēgi, -actum), degere (dēgi), satagere (satēgi), repangere*.
 (b) *a × i, i, a*: (3) *cadēre (-cīdēre, -cīdi), tangēre (-tingēre, -tīgi, -tactum)*.
 (c) *a × i, i, e*: (3) *canēre (-cinēre, -cīnui, -centum), rapēre (-ripēre, -ripūi, -reptum)*.
 (d) *a × i, e, e*: (3) *capēre (-cīpēre, -cēpi, -ceptum), facēre (-ficēre, -fēci, -fectum), jacēre (-jīcēre, -jēci, -jectum), lacēre (-licēre, -lexi, -lectum)*. Exc. *benefacēre* and many other compounds of *facēre* (*-fācēre, -fēcī, -factum, elicēre, elicui, elicītum*).
 (e) *a × i, i, u*: (4) *salire (-silīre, -silui, -sultum)*.
 (f) *g × i, e*: (2) *fatēri (-fītēri, -fessus)*; (3) *apisci (-ipisci, -eptus)*.

* The Greek form *ec (ek)*, must be assumed when *expecto, exul, &c.*, are written for *eo-specto, eo-sul, &c.*

- (g) *e x i, i, e*: (2) *tenēre* (-*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*).
 (h) *e x i, e, e*: (2) *sedēre* (-*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*); (3) *regēre*
 (-*rigēre*, -*rexi*, -*rectum*), *specēre* (-*spicēre*, -*spexi*, -*spec-*
tum), *premēre* (-*primēre*, -*pressi*, -*pressum*), *emēre* (-*imēre*,
 -*ēmi*, -*emptum*), *legēre* (-*ligēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*). *Exc.*
circūnsedēre, *pergēre* (*perrexi*, *perrectum*), *surgēre* (*surre-*
xi, *surrectum*); *co-*, *per-*, *inter-* (*emēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emp-*
tum). Also *sublegēre* (-*lēgi*, -*lectum*), *di-ligēre*, *neg-*
legēre, *intelligēre* (-*lexi*, -*lectum*).⁴ These four last are
 from *legēre*, *to choose*. The compounds of *legēre*, *to read*,
 are *per-*, *prae-*, *re-* (-*legēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*).

EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. (1) <i>Condemno, condemn</i> | <i>Conticeo, be silent</i> |
| <i>Objecto, cast forward</i> | (3) <i>Desipio, be silly</i> |
| <i>Delecto, delight</i> | <i>Restituo, restore</i> |
| <i>Impetro, obtain</i> (by ask-
ing) | g. (a) (3) <i>Abigo, drive away</i> |
| <i>Consécro, consecrate</i> | <i>Refringo, beat back</i> |
| <i>Obtrecto, disparage</i> | <i>Impingo, knock against</i> |
| (2) <i>Coerceo, confine</i> | (b) (3) <i>Occido, die</i> |
| (3) <i>Ircendo, set on fire</i> | <i>Attingo, reach</i> |
| <i>Excerpo, cull</i> | (c) (3) <i>Succino, sing low</i> |
| <i>Ascendo, climb</i> | <i>Diripio, tear asunder</i> |
| <i>Dispergo, disperse</i> | (d) (3) <i>Decipio, deceive</i> |
| <i>Progredior, go forward</i> | <i>Efficio, effect</i> |
| <i>Perpetior, endure</i> | <i>Ejicio, cast out</i> |
| (4) <i>Infercio, stuff in</i> | <i>Allicio, allure</i> |
| <i>Dispertior, distribute</i> | (e) (4) <i>Circumsilio, leap round</i> |
| b. (1) <i>Proculco, trample down</i> | (f) (2) <i>Diffiteor, disown</i> |
| <i>Insulto, insult, leap on</i> | (3) <i>Adipiscor, acquire</i> |
| (3) <i>Decutio, shake down</i> | (g) (2) <i>Abstineo, abstain</i> |
| c. (3) <i>Occido, kill</i> | (h) (2) <i>Praesideo, preside</i> |
| <i>Collido, dash together</i> | (3) <i>Porrigo, stretch</i> |
| <i>Acquiro, acquire</i> | <i>Transpicio, look through</i> |
| d. (3) <i>Inclūdo, shut in</i> | <i>Opprimo, weigh down</i> |
| e. (3) <i>Explōdo, stamp off</i> | <i>Eximo, take out</i> |
| f. (2) <i>Prohibeo, prohibit</i> | <i>Colligo, collect</i> |
| <i>Displaceo, displease</i> | <i>Diligo, love</i> |
| | <i>Perlēgo, read through</i> |

Note.—The Compounds of Verbs which reduplicate the Perfect omit the Reduplication in their Perfects, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *curro*, *do*, *sto*.

III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

The full series comprises—1 Interrogative; 2 Demonstratives; 3 Relative; 4 Indefinite; 5 Universals. These last are subdivisible under several heads. In the following list the dual series (*uter*, &c.) is marked *.

PRONOUNS.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Quis? qui? who? what?</i> | <i>Idem, the same</i> |
| * <i>Uter? which of two?</i> | <i>Alius, another</i> |
| 2 <i>Is, ille, iste, that</i> | * <i>Alter, the one, the other</i> |
| <i>Hic, this</i> | 3 <i>Qui, who</i> |

- 4 Quis, qui, *any one*
 Aliquis, aliqui, *some one*
 Quispiam, *any one*
 Quisquam, ullus, *any at all*
 Quidam, *a certain one*
 *Alteruter, *one or other*
- 5 a. Quisquis, quicumque, *whosoever, whatsoever*
 *Uteruter, uterumque, *which-soever*
- b. Quivis, quilibet, *any you will*
 *Utervis, uterlibet, *which you will*
- c. Quisque, *each (of several)*
 Omnes, universi, *all*
 *Uterque, *each (of two)*
 *Ambe, *both*
- d. Nemo, nullus, *no one, none*
 *Neuter, *neither*

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHERE.

- 1 Ubi? *where?*
 *Utrobi? *in which place?*
- 2 Ibi, illic, istic, *there*
 Hic, *here*
 Ibidem, *in the same place*
 Alibi, *elsewhere*
- 3 Ubi, *where*
- 4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, *anywhere*
 Usquam, *anywhere at all*
- 5 a. Ubiubi, ubicumque, *where-soever*
 b. Ubivis, ubilibet, *where you will*
 c. Ubique, *everywhere*
 *Utrobique, *in both places*
 d. Nusquam, *nowhere*
 *Neutrubi, *in neither place*

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHITHER.

- 1 Quo? *whither?*
 *Utro? *to which place?*
- 2 Eo, illuc, istuc, *thither*
 Huc, *hither*
 Eodem, *to the same place*
 Alio, *to another place*
- 3 Quo, *whither*
- 4 Quo, quopiam, *anywhither;*
 aliquo, *somewhither*
- Quoquam, *anywhither at all*
- 5 a. Quoquo, quocumque, *whithersoever*
 b. Quovis, quolibet, *whither you will*
 c. *Utroque, *to each place*
 d. *Neutro, *to neither place.*

ADVERBS OF PLACE WHENCE.

- 1 Unde, *whence?*
- 2 Inde, illinc, istinc, *thence*
 Hinc, *hence*
 Indidem, *from the same side*
 Aliunde, *from another side*
- 3 Unde, *whence*
- 4 Unde, alicunde, *from some side*
- 5 a. Undeunde, Undecumque, *from whatever side*
 b. Undevis, undelibet, *from what side you will*
 c. Undique, *from every side*
 *Utrimque, *from each side* †

ADVERBS OF TIME WHEN.

- 1 Quando? ubi? *when?*
- 2 Tum, tunc, *then*
 Nunc, jam, *now*
 Simul, *at the same time*
 Alias, *at another time*
- 3 Quum, ubi, *when*
- 4 Quando, aliquando, *ever*
 Umquam, *ever at all*
- 5 a. Quandocumque, *whenever*
 c. Quandoque, *at any time*
 Semper, *always*
 d. Numquam, *never*

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c.
 quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliquorsum, &c.

• See the series of qualis, q. tantus, quot, § 88 (9).

ADVERBS OF NUMBER.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Quotiens? <i>how often?</i> | 4 Aliquotiens, <i>several times</i> |
| 2 Totiens, <i>so often</i> | 5 a. Quotienscumque, <i>how often</i> |
| 3 Quotiens, (<i>as often</i>) <i>as</i> | <i>soever</i> |

ADVERBS OF MANNER. e

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1 Quomodo? <i>quomodo?</i> | 3 Quomodo, <i>quomodo</i> , <i>ut</i> ,
<i>ut? quam? how?</i> |
| 2 Ita, sic, tam, <i>so</i> | Ac, atque, quam, <i>as, than</i> |
| Item, itidem, <i>in like manner</i> | 5 a. Utut, utcumque, <i>quam</i> ,
<i>quomodo, however</i> |
| Aliter, secus, <i>otherwise</i> | |

ADVERBS OF CAUSE.

- 1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*
- 2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*
- 3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

CORRELATION BETWEEN A DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERB AND A CONJUNCTION APPEARS ALSO IN

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) Consecutive Construction:
Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum,
&c., <i>so, so much, &c.</i>
ut, u. non, ut nihil, ut
nemo, &c., <i>that, &c.</i> | Usque, eo, &c., <i>so long, &c.</i>
dum, donec, quoad, <i>until</i> |
| (2) Final Construction:
Idcirco, ideo, &c., <i>for the</i>
<i>purpose, &c.</i>
ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c.,
<i>that, &c.</i> | (4) Conditional Construction:
Modo, tantum, tantummo
do, <i>only, &c.</i>
si, <i>if</i> (or omitting si). |
| (3) Temporal Construction:
Tum, tunc, <i>then</i>
quum, <i>when</i>
Interea, <i>meantime</i>
dum, <i>whilst</i> | (5) Concessive Construction:
Tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless</i>
etsi, etiamsi, quamquam,
quamvis, &c., <i>although, &c.</i> |
| | (6) Comparative Construction.
Ita, perinde, proinde, simili-
liter, itidem, <i>just so, &c.</i>
quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., <i>as if,</i>
<i>&c.</i> |

IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME.

A. NUMERALS.

The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals hinge (*cardo, hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: bina castra, *two camps*.

Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (*ordo*): primus, *first*, &c.

Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: Sexageni caedunt, *sixty men beat each (centurion)*.—TAC. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

Numeral Adverbs denote the number of times that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.

<i>Roman Symbols.</i>	<i>Cardinalia.</i>	<i>Ordinalia.</i>	<i>Distributiva.</i>	<i>Adverbia.</i>
I.	unus	primus	singuli	semel
II.	duo	secundus or alter	bini	bis
III.	tres	tertius	terni or trini	ter
IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
V.	quinque	quintus	quini	quingens
VI.	sex	sextus	seni	sexiens
VII.	septem	septimus	septeni	septiens
VIII.	octo	octavus	octoni	octiens
IX.	novem	nonus	noveni	noviens
X.	decem	decimus	deni	deciens
XI.	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undeciens
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodeciens
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredeciens
XVIII.	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicieni	duodeviciens
XIX.	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicieni	undeviciens
XX.	viginti	vicesimus	vicieni	viciens
XXI.	{ unus et vi- ginti or vi- ginti unus }	{ primus et vice- simus or vice- simus primus }	vicieni singuli	{ semel et vi- ciens }
XXX.	triginta	tricesimus	tricieni	triciens
XL.	quadraginta	quadagesimus	quadrageni	quadragiens
L.	quingenta	quingagesimus	quingageni	quingagens
LX.	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagens
LXX.	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagens
LXXX.	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogens
XC.	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagens
C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centiens
CC.	ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducentiens
DC.	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingentiens
M or CIO.	mille	millesimus	singula milia	miliens
MM.	duo milia	bis millesimus	bina milia	bis miliens

c. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramur, we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—CIC. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, Roscius left 13 farms.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, Romulus reigned 37 years.*—CIC. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur, to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complavit annos, Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—CIC. *Olympiade centesima quarta decima Lysippus fuit, Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—PLIN.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numeral

Adverbs *bis*, *ter*, &c., to mille (chiefly in poetry), or by prefixing the Cardinal Numbers to milia: duo milia, tria milia, &c.

Milia is generally followed by a Genitive: but if smaller numbers intervene between milia and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: Tria milia et septingenti pedites ierun., 3,000 *in antry marched*.—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to centum milia or centena milia, as stated in the following passage: Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum milia; itaque et hodie multiplicatur haec, ut decies centena milia aut saepius dicantur.—PLIN.

f. Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for primus.

g. The Numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of duo and unus from the next multiple of 10: duodeviginti (duodevicesimus), 18; undeviginti (undevicesimus), 19; duodetriginta (duodetricesimus), 28; undetriginta (undetricesimus), 29; &c., &c.: duodecentum (duodecentesimus), 98; undecentum (undecentesimus), 99.

B. MONEY.

a. The As (Libra), or pound of 12 ounces (uncia), was thus divided:

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.
Sextans	= 2 " $\frac{1}{6}$ "	Bes	= 8 " $\frac{2}{3}$ "
Quadrans	= 3 " $\frac{1}{4}$ "	Dodrans	= 9 " $\frac{3}{4}$ "
Triens	= 4 " $\frac{1}{3}$ "	Dextans	= 10 " $\frac{5}{6}$ "
Quincunx	= 5 " $\frac{5}{12}$ "	Deunx	= 11 " $\frac{11}{12}$ "
Semissis	= 6 " $\frac{1}{2}$ "		

b. Unciae usurae = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$ " " = 2 " "
etc.	etc. " etc. "

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae; and binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., &c. Unciarius fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as = $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. per annum.

c. Heres ex asse . . . means heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex semisse, or . . . } " heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
Heres ex dimidia parte . . . }
etc. etc.

d. The Sestertius (Nummus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, being $\frac{1}{4}$ of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS.

The Sestertium (= 1000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertia, or HS., denote so many 100,000 sestertii:

Thus HS.X = Sestertia decem, 10 sesterces.

HS.X = Sestertia decem, 10,000 sesterces—

HS.X = Sestertium decies, 1,000,000 sesterces,

C. TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

Examples.—May 31, *Pridie Kalendas Junias*.

„ 30, *Ante diem tertium* (a.d. III.) *Kal. Jun.*

„ 11, „ „ *quintum* (a.d. V.) *Id. Mai.*

„ 2, „ „ *sextum* (a.d. VI.) *Non. Mai.*

English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. *Kal. Mart.*)* was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called *DIES BISEXTUS*, and leap-year itself *ANNUS BISEXTUS*.]

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

(1) PRAENOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kaeso	Q. Quinctus
C. } Gaius	L. Lucius	S. (Sex.) Sextus
G. } Gaius	M. Marcus	Se ^r . Servius
Cn. } Gnaeus	M'. Manius	Sp. Spurius
Gn. } Gnaeus	Mam. Mamercus	T. Titus
D. Decimus	P. Publius	Ti ^b (Tib.) Tiberius

Note.—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

(2) VARIA.

A. D. Ante diem	HS. Sestertius, Sestertium	P. R. Populus Romanus
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Aed. Aedilis	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Cos. Consul	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus
Coss. Consules	Non. Nonae	S. C. Senatusconsultum
D. Divus	O. M. Optimus Maximus	S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam
Des. Designatus	P. C. Patres (et) Conscripti	Tr. Tribunus
Eq. Rom. Eques Romanus	P. M. Pontifex Maximus	
F. Filius		

II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

I. AGREEMENT. § 88-92. § 156-160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87. B. a.

Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjective Pronouns.

An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Complement with any Noun-term, § 87 E.

B. Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156).

1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl, *man* or *men* being implied: *amicus*, a friend; *sapiens*, a wise man; *stultus*, a fool; *boni*, good men; *multi*, many; *plerique*, most.

2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: *Honestum et utile*, morality and expediency.—Cic. *Triste lupus stabulis*, the wolf is a bane to the stalls.—Verg.

3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: *multa*, many things; *omnia*, all things.

C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms.

A Substantive may be (§ 87. F.) in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement.

An Appositive usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: *Usus magister egregius.*—PLIN. • *Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.*—CIC.

D. The use of the Relative (§ 91) may be shewn by placing it between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case: •

Vir quem virum vides rex est (Full Form).

Vir quem . . . vides rex est (Usual Form).

. . . *quem virum vides rex est.*

. . . *quem vides rex est.*

But it may refer to a Noun-term of any Person, ego, nos, tu, vos, &c.

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158–160):—

1. Ellipsis omits words: (1) Pronouns; *Amunt, they say*: (2) Substantives; *Falernum, Falernian* (vinum, wine), *gelida* (aqua), *cold water*; *ad Junonis, to Juno's* (templum, temple). (3) Verbs, especially the Copulants est, sunt. See § 158.

Emphasis throws stress on words: *Ego reges eieci, vos tyrannos introducitis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—LIV.

2. Attraction removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: *Amantium irae amoris integratio est, the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—TER.; where est agrees with the Complement integratio, not with the Subject irae.

3. Synesis occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and construction is made to agree with meaning:

Capita conjurationis secus percussi sunt, the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.—LIV. *Pars epulis onerant mensas, part load the tables with viands.*—VERG.

Singular Nouns with Plural sense; pars, juvenus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, vulgus, etc., are called Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.

F. A Composite Subject (§ 92) contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions, or united by the Preposition cum.

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.—VERG.

a. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: *Senatus populusque intellegit,*—CIC.

B. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: *Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—TAC.

7. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. § 92, 1. 2.

• Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157. also § 75, &c. •

II. CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT. § 93-94.

These rules show :

- (1) that the Subject of a Verb Finite is a Nominative ;
- (2) that the Subject of an Infinitive is an Accusative ;
- (3) that the Complement of a Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinitive, agrees, if a single Adjective, attributively with the Subject ; if a single Substantive, appositively with the Subject, except in a few instances (§ 108, § 127).

The Complement, in two examples of Rule § 94, follows a Finite Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in two others it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in the last two it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, obliquely used, and agrees with an Accusative Subject.

The Verb *sum* may be completely Predicative, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence : *Jam seges est, ubi Troja fuit, now corn is, where Troy was.*—OV.

Factive Verbs in the Passive Voice are Copulative. See III. D.

III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. § 95-103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. *Romulus condidit, Romulus founded*, is incomplete in sense until we add *Romam, Rome*.

How to express a Transitive Active Sentence Passively, see IX. E.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively ; *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had now turned.*—LIV.

(2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive : *Flet necem fili, he weeps for his son's death.*

(3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive : *Hostes urbem circumsedant, the enemies surround the city.*

(4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents : *Exuitur cornua, she puts off her horns.*—OV. Hence such constructions as *Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds.*—VERG.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are *doceo* (and its compounds), *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *posco*, *flagito*, *percontor*, and, in Horace, *lascasso*. Sometimes *celo, conceal*.

In Passive Construction the Accusative of the thing remains : *Quid tu docearis a me litteras ? why should you be taught letters by me ?*

D. Factive Verbs (§ 99) are such as may be said to *make* (*facere*) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought :

(1) *facio*, *efficio*, *reddo*, *praesto*, *creo*, *lego*, *eligo*, &c. ; (2) *dico*, *voco*, *memoro*, *praedico*, *nomino*, *nuncupo*, *declaro*, *usurpo*, *appello*, *saluto*, &c. ; (3) *aestimo*, *numpero*, *credo*, *existimo*, *puto*, *duco*, *judico*, *habeo*, *censeo*, *agnosco*, *invenio*, *reperio*, *deprehendo*, &c., &c.

They are Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs, and Factive Construction in the Passive becomes Copulative :

Fis dea a nobis. Fortuna : A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est.

E. The Accusative of Respect is seldom used in prose, except when it is a Pronoun or an Adjective: *Illud doleo; Hoc laetor; Cetera assentior Crasso, in other things I agree with Crassus.*—CIC •

F. Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101•

The Prepositions *in, ad*, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

IV. THE DATIVE CASE. § 104–109.

A. Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (105) are called Trajective. Thus *carus, dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; *dare, to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (as *parco, faveo, irascor, &c.*), are purely Trajective: if they take an Accusative also, they are both Trajective and Transitive, such as *do, narro, spondeo, &c.*

B. The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of nearness and remoteness, presence and absence, affinity and non-affinity, custom and strangeness, fitness and unfitness, likeness and unlikeness, agreement and disagreement, union and disunion, comparison and contrast. Next, *showing and being shown* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of utterance and silence, narration and concealment, affirmation and denial, evidence and obscurity, persuasion and dissuasion. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of favour or disfavour. These comprise words which express profit and harm, kindness and unkindness, bounty and stint, indulgence and grudging, help and obstruction, pleasing and displeasing, pardon and resentment, flattery and reviling, blessing and malediction, compliance and resistance, promise and menace, gift, loan, present, payment, dedication, and refusal; delivery and withdrawal; faith and infidelity, trust and distrust, lawfulness and unlawfulness, ease and difficulty. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express rule and subservience, command and obedience. •

C. The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (106 a.) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness. •

D. The reason why a Dative of that for which anything is or happens (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi, § 107) may be attached to almost any predication, is because almost any action or state may be attended with some result to some Recipient; it may be for or against some one's interest; in some way interesting to some one. Thus *nubere* means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, *nubere viro*, 'to take the veil for her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' *Vacare* means 'to be void,' or 'empty'; hence, 'to be disengaged for,' that is, 'to have leisure for.'

as, *vacare philosophiae*. Here, too, may be ranked the Ethic Dative, the Dative with *sum*, with Participles, Gerunds, &c.

E. Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of *ad* with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are *ratus*, *aptus*, *utilis*, *idoneus*, *paratus*, *rudis*, &c.: *Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus*, *we are born to praise and glory*.—CIC.

Others use *in*, *erga*, *adversus*: *Acer in hostem*, *spirited against the foe*.—VERG. *Benignus erga te fui*, *I was kind towards you*.—PLAUT.

Communis, *proprius*, *affinis*, *similis*, *par*, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

F. Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) take Accusative and not Dative: *juvo*, *jubeo*, *laedo*, *rego*, *guberno*. *Multos castra juvant*, *the camp delights many*. *Animum rege*, *rule the temper*.—HOR.

Others use Dative or Accusative: *tempero*, *moderor*.

The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find *donare alicui munus* and *donare aliquem munere*, *invidere alicui*, *invidere rem alicui*, *invidere re alicui*.

G. The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for*. But after some Adjectives and Verbs (*iratus*, *succenseo*, &c.) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (*disto*, *aufero*, &c.), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon*, *into*, or *against*. Others, *parco*, *placeo*, *displaceo*, *medeor*, &c., are rendered without an English Preposition.

H. The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: *Non intellegor ulli*, *I am not understood by anybody*.—OV. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: *It clamor caelo*, *a cry ascends to heaven*.—VERG.

V. THE ABLATIVE CASE. § 110-125.

A. When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by*, *for*, *from*, *through*, *with*, *at*. II. Instrument, *with*, *by*. III. Manner: *in*, *with*, *by*. IV. Condition: *with*, *in*, *upon*. V. Quality: *of*, *with*. VI. Respect, *in*, *by*, *with*. VII. Value or Price: *at*, *for*, *of*, *with*. VIII. Measure: *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter: *of*, *in*, *with*, *from*, *upon*, *for*, or no Preposition. X. Time: *at*, *in*, *within*, or no Preposition. XI. *M.* Place by which: *by*, *along*, *upon*, *through*. *B.* Place where: *at*, *in*, *upon* (*humi*). *G.* Place from which: *from*. XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin: *from*, *of*. XIV. Thing compared: *than*.

B. The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *prae*; also by *ob*, *per*, *propter*, with Accusative. Agent requires *a*, *ab*; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires *cum*, (except in a few phrases, such as *vi fraude*, *jure*, *injuriâ*, *ritu*, *silentio*, *arte*, *ordine*, &c.). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered *dolore loquor*, *diligentiâ scribit*, but *cum dolore loquor* (or *dolens loquor*), *cum diligentiâ scribit* (or *diligenter scribit*).

If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: *Cato summā contentione dixit, Cato spoke with the utmost energy.*—CIC. *Magnā cum curā atque diligentia scripsit, he wrote with great care and diligence.*—CIC.

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative of Genitive, requires an Epithet. § 115.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying sale, purchase, dearth, cheapness, cost, &c.

Muto, I change, may have Accus. of what is left, and Abl. of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus, *mutare urbem exilio, and mutare urbe exilium* may equally mean '*to quit the city and go into banishment.*'

Pretio is often dropped: *magno, dear; parvo, vili, cheap.* § 117.

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words.

For this purpose in particular are used the Pronominal Ablatives *hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*: also *paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.*: *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, the more they have, the more they desire.* § 118.

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent:

Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, the sun makes two turns in each year.—CIC. *De die, before the close of day. De nocte, before the close of night. De multā nocte, long before the close of night. Sub vesperum, on the approach of evening. Diem ex die expecto, I wait day after day.* In is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb follows: *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent, some shear sheep twice a year.*—VARR.

G. 1. Generally Place where (§ 121 B.) is expressed with *in*: *in portu navigo.*—SEN. *In* is omitted in certain phrases:

Loco (in the stead), multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.; hoc libro, alio libro, &c.; terrā marique; or where totus is used: totā Asiā, in all Asia, dextrā (parto), on the right hand, laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand.

Poets are more free in the omission: *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, in forests and fields and roads lie revolting corpses.*—OV. But this license needs discrimination.

When a work is quoted *in* is used: *in Iliade Homeri; in Andriā Terentii; in Gorgiā Platonis*; but when the author only is cited, *apud*; *apud Homerum; apud Terentium; apud Platonem (in Homer, &c.).*

2. That the seeming Genitive, *Romae, Corinthi, &c.* (§ 121 B. a.), is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai (Romae), militai (militiae) Mileti, domi, lumi, belli*; and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i*, *ruri, Lacedaemoni*—NEP.; *Carthagini*—LIV.; *Tiburi*—CIC., &c.; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns:

In Epheso est. In Ephesus abii. Ex Epheso huc litteras misi, I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus.—PLAUT. *Has litteras a Brundisio dedit, this letter he dated from Brundisium.*—CIC.

H. The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reperto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separe, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

K. 1. The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius*.—HOR. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder*.—CIC. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils*.—LIV.

2. After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than 600 fell*.—LIV. Unus is omitted: Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year*.—CIC.

L. 1. The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

2. A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined*.—CIC.

VI. THE GENITIVE CASE. § 126-136.

A. 1. The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, cupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exte forum. So the Possessive Pronouns; Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you*.—CIC. 'Native of a place' is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: Dionysius Halicarnasseus, for Dionysius Halicarnassensis natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus*.

2. The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in 's: Philippi filius, 'son of Philip,' or 'Philip's son.'

3. Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: Instar montis equum, *a*

3. (1) Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, *revert for rem fert*, and mea, &c. be corruptions of meam, &c. (§ 129)

2. It may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: Utriusque nostrum magna interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you*.—CIC.

C. 1. The Genitives *Rei Distributae* (§ 130) and *Rei Demensae* (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless a Collective Noun; the latter usually Singular.

The Partitive words which govern the former Genitive are—

(a) Pronominals: *alius, alter, uter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quotcumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispian, &c.*

(β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: *unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius.*

(γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: *Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: Avium loquaciores, the noisier sort of birds.—PLIN.* Also Superlative Adverbs.

(δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: *Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.*

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender to the Subject:

Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, the Indus is the largest of all rivers.—CIC.

Or varied by Synesis: *Dulcissime rerum, dearest of beings.—HOR.*

• 3. A Collective Noun is distributed:

Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus, Plato the most learned man of all Greece.—CIC.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement:

Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains.—HOR.

5. Adverbs of Place, *ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c.*, are Partitively used with the Genitives *gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.*:

Nusquam gentium, nowhere in the world.—LIV.

6. *Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus*, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force:

Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus.—CAES.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are:

Nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, tantum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium, dimidium.

They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: *nimium pecuniae (too much money); nihil mali (no evil).*

• They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly in the same Case with the word of Quantity: *Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say.—CIC.* *Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, and nothing exists like or in second rank.—HOR.*

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these:

(1) Cause: *Laudat leti juvenem, he praises the youth for his death.*

(2) Respect: *O seri studiorum, O late in your studies.*

(3) Dominion: *Dannus agrestium regnavit populorum, Dannus ruled over rustic tribes.*

VII. THE VERB INFINITIVE. § 140-141.

A. The Infinitive when used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as prose, (a) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (b) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (c) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together:

Ceterum facies totius negoti varia, incerta, foeda, atque miserabilis; dispersi a suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemque periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.—SALL. This Infinitive is Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is Prolatively used when it carries "on the construction of Verbs which express ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said, &c.:

Fossum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c.

Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (*videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperior, arguor, &c.*) are used personally with Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. *Videtur errasse Cicero* is better than *Videtur errasse Ciceronem*; *Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse*, than *Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse*.

The Participle Passive is often found after such Verbs with ellipse of *esse*: *Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., Prometheus is said to have been compelled, &c.—HOR. Manlius locutus fertur, LIV.*

2. The construction of an Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric:

Audax omnia perpeti, bold to endure all things.—HOR. Fruges consumere nati, born to consume the fruits.—HOR.

In the best prose it is used but with few words; *Paratus, assuetus, &c.*; but *Tacitus* adopts it freely.

C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, *non esse solvendo, to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office: *Triumviri agro dando, triumvirs for assigning land, &c.*

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143):

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.—CIC.

Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object:

Pars honesti veratur in tribuendo suum cuique, one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.—CIC. Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.—LIV.

But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.

VIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. § 145.

A Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to the Subject of *their own* Person. But *se* and *suus* differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say *amat me, he loves me, amat te, he loves thee*; we cannot say, *amo se, amas se*, but *amo eum, I love him, amas eam, thou lovest him*; not, *culpo eum factum*, but *culpo ejus factum, I blame his deed*.

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous

(a) If the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, a.;

(b) If the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the 2nd example;

(c) If the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: *Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit, Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property.*—LIV. To suppose that Scipio restored his own property to the Syracusans would be absurd.

The Object to which *se, suus*, are referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, which, if so used, generally follows them. *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, his own character moulds each man's fortune.*—NEP.

When *se, suus*, would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun *ipse*: *Chiljus te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu, Chiljus requests you and I at his request.*—CIC. *Caesar milites incusavit cur de sua virtute et de ipsius diligentia desperarent, Caesar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness.*—CAES.

IX. ADDITAMENTA MEMORABILIA.

A. Negatives:—

Non, haud, deny: *ne* prohibits. *Haud* is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: *res haud dubia; haud temere, &c.* And with a few Verbs: *haud scio, haud dubito.*

Ne . . . quidem has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: as. *Ne tu quidem, not even you.* Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: *Non praetereundum est ne id quidem, even that should not be passed over.*—CIC.; or it follows without one: *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo, I will not appeal even to Cato.*—CIC. *Nedum*, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

The Pronominal words *quisquam, ullus, umquam, usquam, &c.*, are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: *non, haud, si, num, &c.*; *quisquam, ullus, &c.* The Negative is contained in *nemo* (*ne-homo*), *nullus* (*ne-ullus*), *numquam, nusquam, nequiquam, nequaquam, &c.*

If Negative Consecutive Clauses are used *ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut numquam, ut nusquam, &c.*; but in Final Clauses *ne, ut ne, ne quis, ut ne quis, ne quando, ut ne quando, ne quo, ut ne quo, &c.*

Non quod (generally), *non quo* (always), take a Subjunctive Verb.

For *et nemo*, write *nequisquam*; for *et nihil*, *neque quicquam*; for *et nullus*, *neque ullus*; for *et numquam*, *neque umquam, &c.*; for *ais non*, write *nego*.

Neque (nec) is used for et non, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: Quæstio difficilis est et non profutura.

Non nihil, *something*; nihil non, *everything*; non nunquam, *sometimes*; nunquam non, *always*, &c.; non potui non ire, *I could not but go*.

B. Single and Double Questions.

a. Single: Nonne expects the answer *Yes*; num, the answer *No*; -né is indifferent; an often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

b. Double. The forms are:

utrum	an (or)
num	an (or)
-né	an (or)
—	an, anne (or).

A negation in the second member is annon or necne.

a. Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere? What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?—Cic.

An tu me tristem esse putas? *Do you think I am downcast?—PLAUT.*

Num negare audes? *Do you venture to deny?—Cic.*

Canis nonne similis lupo est? *Is not a dog like a wolf?—Cic.*

b. Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?—Cic.

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?—Cic.*

Romane venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?—Cic.*

Quæram justum sit necne poema, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.—HOR.*

C. Prepositions:

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive: Tauro tenus *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts*.

b. Ante, *circa*, *circum*, *circiter*, *citra*, *extra*, *infra*, *intra*, *juxta*, *pone*, *post*, *prope*, *supra*, *ultra*, *clam*, *coram*, *palam*, *super*, *subter*, may be used as Adverbs.

*c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe: (1) Ad: ad tempus, for a time; ad multam noctem, till late at night; ad unum, to a man; ad tibiam canere, to sing to the flute; ad hoc, further-
more; ad extremum, at the last; ad summum, in fine; ad verbum, word for word; ad unguem, to a nicety; ad amussim, accurately; ad decem annos, ten years hence; servi ad remum, slaves for rowing; ad judices, before the judges; insignis ad laudem, eminent in renown; nihil ad te, nothing compared with you. (2) Per: per noctem, during the night; per litteras, by letter; per jocum, in jest; per deos te oro, I pray you by the gods; per me licet, I give leave; res per se expetenda, a thing in itself desirable. (3) A, ab: a fronte, in the van; a tergo, in the rear; a millibus passus a duobus, two miles off; prope abest a mari, he is near the sea; philosophus a Platone, a Platonic philosopher; hoc a me facit, this is on my side; proximus a regi, next to the king; ab animo ieger sum, I am sick at heart; a doctrina instructus, well informed; a verris a pedibus, a footman; a manu, as government. (4) De: de nocte, in the night; de die, in the daytime; de meo, from my own purse; de*

marmore, of marble; de more, according to custom; de industria, on purpose; de novo, afresh; justis de causis, for good reasons; de Parthis triumphavit, he triumphed over the Parthians. (5) E, ex: diem ex die, day after day; ex pedibus laborat, he has the gout in his feet; e republica, for the good of the state; heres ex asse, universal heir; ex improviso, by surprise; ex tempore, offhand; e vestigio, suddenly; e regione Massiliae, opposite Marseilles. (6) Prae: praeme beatus es, you are happy compared with me; praedolore tacet, he is silent from grief. (7) Pro: pro foribus, before the door; pro certo, for a fact; pro viribus, according to one's powers; pro tua humanitate, such is your courtesy; pro re nata, in existing circumstances; pro eo ac potui, according to my ability. (8) In: a. frumentum binis assibus in modum, corn at two asses a peck; dormire in lucem, to sleep till daylight; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds; in hunc modum locutus est, he spoke in this wise; in praesens, for the time being; in horas, from hour to hour; in aeternum, for ever; in universum, generally; in vicem, in turns. (9) In incerto, in doubt; in praesenti, at this moment; hic non modo in vere alieno nullo, sed in suis nummis multis est, this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own; filius in manu patris, a son in his father's power; in tua manu hoc est, this is in your power.

D. Participles:

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

b. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in *τέος*) representing all these categories; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles: Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but [usually] Active in sense: labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in *dus*: patior, patiens, passurus, passus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Participle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive:

Tarquinium regem qui non tulerim, Siciniam feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Siciniam?*—Liv. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, *Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.*—Cic. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo loco nihil attigit, *Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very hour of victory, meddled*

e. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Particle: as, *Pueri, qui—quum—dum docentur, discunt*—Greek *οι παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μαθήονται*, *Children by being taught learn*. Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense: *Sperata victoria* (Liv.) = *victoria quae speratur*.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it: *Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora*, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for*.—HOR.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs may occasionally be rendered as Present Active: *ausus, fatus, diffusus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus*:

Cæsar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet, *Cæsar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms*.—CÆS. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives: *neglẽgens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus, tremendus, &c.*

Many appear as Substantives. Such are, *amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c.*

The nouns, *man, men, thing, &c.*, are frequently to be understood with Participles: *Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui*. *The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead*.—CIC. *Grandelocuturi nebulas Helicone legunt*, *They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon*.—PERS. *Male parta male dilabuntur, Illi gotten, illi go*.—CIC. *Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda*, *I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken*.—PLIN. See § 142. Also § 107 d.

E. Active and Passive Construction:

a. When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent:

ACT. *Egrege consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egrege ab consule res gesta est.*

The consul conducted the affair excellently.—LIV.

b. When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent.

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

The enemy fought steadily.—CÆS.

c. If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case:

ACT. *Medicinae nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinae a nobis indiget.*

We need medicine.—CIC.

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.*

They cannot hurt me.—CIC.

Act. Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.

Pass. Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis aequum est.

• *It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.*—LIV.

(a) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; Itur in antiquam silvam, *They go into the ancient forest.*—VERG. Nunc est bibendum, *Now we must drink.*—F

(b) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(c) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, *The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—QUINT. Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, *I would rather be stripped by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—QUINT.

F. Summary of Impersonal Construction:

a. Case-construction.

(1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing:

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret. § 134.

(2) Accusative of the Object:

Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.

(3) Dative:

Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Transitive.

(4) Ad with Accusative: attinet, pertinet, conducit.

b. Subject-construction.

(1) Verb-noun Infinitive:

Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, refert, necesse est.

(2) Infinitive Clause (Enuntiatio Obliqua):

Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert, necesse est.

(3) Subjunctive Clause with ut (for Infinitive Clause):

Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, refert, necesse est.

(4) Subjunctive Clause omitting ut:

Oportet, licet, necesse est.

(5) Indicative Clause with quod (for Infinitive Clause):

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert.

- (6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret : also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather : pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

- (a) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used :

* Pertaesum est; pigitum est; puditum est; miseritum est; libitum est; licitum est; placitum est. *u*

(b) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal: coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit: *Pigere eum facti coepit, he began to be sorry for the act.*—*Just.* *Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, the highest things cannot be reached, except from beginnings.*—*Quint.*

G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space :

- a. (1) Time *during* which : §§ 102. 103. 120.
Accusative ; Accus. with *per* ; rarely Ablative.
(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c. : §§ 120. 122.
Ablative ; Prepositions with their Cases.
b. (1) Place *where* : § 121. A. B. 122.
Ablative with *in* ; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus :
Singular Case in *ae, i* or *e* ; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus*,
without a Preposition. *Romae, militiae, Corinthi, domi,*
humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

- (2) Place *whither* : §§ 101. 103.
Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :
Accusative without Preposition usually.

- (3) Place *whence* : §§ 121 C. 122.
Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :
Ablative without Preposition usually.

- c. (1) Space intervening : §§ 102 (2). 118.
Accusative ; *Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, I was one day's journey distant from Amanus.*—*Cic.*
Or Ablative of Measure ; *Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidauris distat, the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—*Liv.*

- (2) Space traversed : § 102
Accusative ; *Milia tum pransi tria repimus, then after dining we creep on three miles.*—*Hor.*

- (3) Space of measurement :
Accusative, § 102 ; or Ablative, § 118 ; or Genitive of Quantity ; *Areas latas pedum decem facito, you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—*Colum.*

III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

METRE:—

A. (a) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

- This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

Scheme.

3 4

— ∪ ∪ | — —

Examples.

- Sicēlī|dēs Mū|sae ∥ paū|lō ma|jōrā cā|nēmus.
- Nōn ōm|nēs ār|bustā ∥ jū|vānt hūmī|lēsquē mŷ|rīcae.

A break in the words, called *Caesura*, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after -sae, in (1). This is called a *strong* *Caesura*. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after -ta in (2), it is called a *weak* *Caesura*. Occasionally, the chief *Caesura* occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse:

Clāmō|rēs sīmūl | hōrrēn | dōs ∥ ād | sīdērā | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

(b) Dactylic Pentameter:

This Verse consists of two parts, called *Penthemimers*, which are kept distinct. The first *Penthemimer* contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

Scheme.

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | —

Example.

- Tū pātēr | ēt mā|tēr || tū mīhī | frātēr ē|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an *Hexameter* in the *Elegiac Distich*:

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

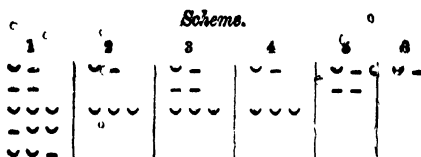
The chief *Elegiac* poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

B. (a) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius:

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an *Iambus*:

- Sūs | ēt ip|sā Rōmā vī|rībūs | rūk.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (— — —) in the first. A Tribrach (— — —) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.



Examples.

LĀbūn|tūr āl|tīs || in|tērīm | rīpīs | āquae.
 Cānīdī|ā brēvī|būs || im|plicā|tā vī|pēris.
 Pōsitōs|quē vēr|nās || dī|tīs ēx|āmēn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot;

Ībē|ricīs | pērūs|tē || fū|nībūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

(b) Iambic Dimeter.

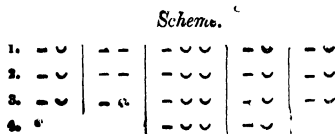
This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich;

Pātēr|nā rū|rā bō|būs ex|ercēt | sūs.
 Sōlū|tūs ōm|nī fē|nōre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

C. The Sapphic Stanza:

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphic Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius



Example.

1. Ōtī|ūm dī | vōs rōgāt | in pā|tenti
 2. Prēnsūs | Aēgāē|ō sīmūl | ātrā | nūbes
 3. Cōndī|dīt lū|nām nēquē | cērtā | fulgent
 4. Sīdērā | nautis.

D. The Alcaic Stanza;

This Stanza contains four lines: of which the two first are similar

Scheme.

1,	$\bar{\text{—}} \text{—}$	—	—	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	—
2.	—	—	—	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	—
3.	—	—	—	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	—
4.,	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	—

Example.

Ēheū | fūgā|cēs | Pōstūmě | Pōstūme

Lābūn|tūr ān|nī | nēc pīē|tās mōram

Rūgīs | ēt in|stāntī | sēnēc|tae

Affērēt | indōmī | tāēquē | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.

APPENDIX II.

MOOD AND COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

I. THE TWO PRIMARY MOODS.

1. The Latin Verb, like the Greek, has Moods (modes of expression), containing Tenses, which mark time, with Numbers and Persons, which determine agents.

The primary Moods are two; a Fact-mood (called *Indicative*), which states and questions: and a Will-mood (called from one of its uses *Imperative*), which bids or entreats.

The Fact-mood has Present, Past and Future Tenses, each having two Numbers (Singular and Plural) with three Persons in each.

The Will-mood, having no Past Tenses and no First Persons, is fragmentary.

The old verb *eo*, *ire*, *to go* (pp. 64, 65), has in the Indicative six Tenses, with their full complements: *eo* &c., *ibo* &c., *ibam* &c., *ivi* &c., *ivero* &c., *iveram* &c.: in the Imperative two forms (called there a Present Tense) of the second Persons, *i*, *ite*; and forms (called, as by Madvig, a Future) of the Second and Third Persons, *ito*, *itote*, *eunto*. These old -to forms are but sparingly used in classical prose, though not unusual in poetry.

2. The Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

The Present indicates, (1) what *is* at the time; *esurio*: *frater villam venditat*: (2) what *is* at the same time with something else; *dum spiro*, *spero*: *dum mula ligatur*, *tota abit hora*; hence the idiom of 'dum,' which is used with a present, even in past time; *dum obsequor* *adulescentibus*, *me senem esse sum oblitus*: (3) what *is* habitually or always; *Bacchus amat colles*: *probitas laudatur et alget*: (4) what an author, living in his works, says or does; *Livius scribit*: *Tacitus ait*: *Cicero verbis abundat*.

- Obs. 1. The Present with *jamdiu*, *jampridem*, *jamdudum*, states what *has been and still is*; *jampridem cupio*, *I have been long desiring*; *jamdudum video*, *I see it this long time*.

- Obs. 2. The Historic Present (so called) is used by historians and poets to paint to the mind's eye past scenes; *Roma crescit* *Albae ruinis*, *duplicatur civium numerus*, *Caelius additur urbi mons* &c. L. (See Hist. Infinitive, p. 140.) It is often used along with the Perfect. See Verg. *Aen. v. 243* and often.

The Perfect indicates (1) as simple aorist, what *was* in time past; *veni, vidi, vici*: hence (2) what *has ceased to exist*; *fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium*: (3) what *has been up to the present moment* (past in present); *vixi et quem dederat cursum fortuna peregi: dixi* (at the close of a speech): hence (4) what *is accomplished or suddenly done*; *perii: vicimus: fugere, feras*: (5) what *has always happened* under the circumstances, what *is usual*; *amisso rege ruperunt fidem, constructaque mella disputare*, V.

The Imperfect indicates (1) what *was going on* in time past; see Cic. Off. iii. 27, *neque vero tum ignorabat* &c. (2) what *was usual* in time past; *dicebat melius quam scripsit Hortensius*, C.

The Pluperfect indicates what *was past* in time past; *intruerant Danaï, et tectum omne tenebant*, V.

The Simple Future indicates what *will be* in time to come: *ibitis Italiam*. It is often used as a polite Imperative; *facies ut sciam*, C.: *nec totâ claudes faenilia brumâ*, V.

The Future Perfect indicates what *will be completed* in time to come; *qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, C.; and often stands in connection with simple Future; *ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, C.; *Turno tempus erit cum optaverit intactum Pallanta*, V.; or for simple Future; *si pergis, abiero*, Ter.

Obs. The Future Conjugation -urus sum &c. (§ 64) expresses (1) 'being about to,' 'on the point of,' (2) 'being likely to' or 'sure to,' (3) 'being destined to.' On the Gerundive Conjugation, see § 144.

Note 1. A Roman, writing a letter, arranged the Tenses with reference to the time when it would be received; *res, cum hæc scriberem, erat in extremum adducta discrimen, at the time I write, the affair is brought to a crisis*, C.

Note 2. Latin writers in prose and poetry have a subtle construction, by which verbs signifying *power, duty, fitness* (*possum, debeo, decet, licet, oportet* &c.) and phrases of similar force with the verb 'sum' (*aequum, melius, optimum, par, &c.*, including the Participles in -dus, -rus), use their past tenses in the Indicative, where the Conjunctive might be otherwise expected: thus Virgil has *poteras* (Ecl. i. 80), *potui* (Aen. iv. 19), *deceit* (xi. 117), *et vellem et fuerat melius* (xi. 303): and Cicero, *non Asiae nomen obiciendum Murenæ fuit* (Mur. 5).

• The Forms of the Imperative Mood.

The Imperative is freely used to command or entreat in its (so called) Present forms: *i, sequere Italiam: fuge, nate: pergitte, adulescentes: intuemini res nostras: ite, capellæ*.

Obs. 1. Certain Imperatives, idiomatically joined with forms of other verbs, give to these, by periphrasis, an imperative sense. Such are, *fac, cura*, and others; (for prohibition) *cave, noli*, and in poetry, *fuge, mitte, parce*, and others; *cura ut quam primum venias: fac magnum animum habes: armis concur-*

rant arma cavete: nolite id velle quod fieri non potest: fuge suspicari: parcite, oves, nimium procedere, V.

Obs. 2. Direct prohibition by 'ne' and Imperative is frequent in poetry; *ne quaere doceri; equo ne credite, V.*; but in prose rare, 'ne' with Perfect Conjunctive being preferred (which poets may also use); *hoc ne feceris: misericordia commotus ne sis: ne respexeris; tu ne quaesieris &c.* See § 147.

Obs. 3. The -to -tor forms are ranked in § 28 &c. as Future: but many call them a second and stronger Imperative, drawn from old legislative formularies. In prose they occur chiefly in solemn documents, as treaties, proclamations &c. Cicero uses them either in speeches, when he wishes to be impressive, or in the familiarity of private letters: poets more freely; *esto: sunt: ipse venito: timor omnis abesto: contemplator.* See Liv. xxiii. 11; xxxviii. 38.

II. THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Besides the Moods cited, the Latin Verb has a Thought-mood, properly termed *Conjunctive*, seeing that its use is to *join with* both the other Moods, and assist their power of expressing speech. It joins with the Indicative so as to state and question in a tone either contingent on a condition, or modified by mental reserve in the nature of a condition. It joins with the Imperative, so as to supply its deficient forms, and also to express the various shades of will-speech in modified tone. The Conjunctive Mood has four Tenses, called Present, Perfect, Imperfect, and Pluperfect, the powers and uses of which are best learnt from reading and practice. Though the Futures are wanting, all the Tenses are capable of referring to Future time, when required.

1. Pure Conjunctive of contingent or modified Statement (negation takes 'non,' or 'haud').
 - A. When a condition is *formally* expressed:

eam si moneas (monueris); irem (issem) si moneres (monuisses): non eam nisi tu moneas (monueris): non irem (issem) nisi tu moneres (monuisses): tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias: improbe feceris, nisi monueris: si luxuriae temperaret, avaritiam non timeres (timuisses): si redisset filius, pater ei veniam daret (dedisset), Ter.
 - B. When a condition is *informally* expressed:

eam (irem, issem) te monente (a te monitus): non eam (irem, issem) te invito (prohibitus a te): optanti divum promittere nemo aude-ret, V.: non illi quisquam se impune tulisset obviis armato, V. Hadria divisus objecto remittas quaerere, Hor.
 - C. When a condition is *implied*:

migrantes cernas: Marte videres fervere Leucaten: (i. e. if you were present): pelago credas innare revulsas Cycladas: cruderis victos (i. e. if you saw them), Liv.: nec quisquam putet &c., V.
 - D. When the tone is modified to avoid positiveness or bluntness:

dubitem haud equidem: perfectum officium rectum, opinor, vocemus, C. Velim, nolim, vellem nolle, malle, may be often so explained.

Forsitan or fortasse are often joined with the verb; *forsitan quoratis: vix verisimile fortasse videatur*, C. The Perfect Conj. is especially used in modified tone; *dixerim, I venture to say*; *crediderim, I am inclined to believe*: *non te transierim: non ausim: forsitan quispiam dixerit*, C. (This and the next use of the Pure Conjunctive are often called Potential.)

2. E. Pure Conjunctive of the modified Question. (Negation with 'non'.)

A direct question, whether of doubt or of feeling, implies more of mental dubitation when used in the Conjunctive. As in the Indicative, it may be single or disjunctive: *faveas tu hosti? tibi ego irascere? quis Trojae nesciat urbem? quid facerem? quo fugerem? quid dem, quid non dem? quid faciam? roger anne rogem? eloquar an silcam? cur non confiteamur quod necesse est? iremusne annon? quare non iremus?*

3. Pure Conjunctive of modified Will-speech (Negation generally by 'ne').

- F. Concessive use: allowing, granting &c.

Luant peccata neque illos juveris auxilio, V.: *per me ista pedibus trahantur*, C.: *tenebras et inertia furta ne timeant*, V.: *ne sit sumum malum dolor, malum certe est*, C.: *fuerit malus civis*, C.: *verum anceps pugnae fuerat fortuna*; *fuisse*; *quid metui moritura?* V.: *nemo is, inquires, umquam fuit*; *ne fuerit*, C.

- G. Optative and Precative uses: wishing, praying &c.

[utinam, ut, o si, occur with Optative: the Precative is chiefly used in addressing superiors or sacred persons, as a deity, a prince &c.]

•(1) *Di vertant bene*, Ter.: *valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati*, C.: *peream nisi vera loquor: ne sim salvus*, si aliter loquor ac sentio, C.: *ita me di ament: sollicitat, ita vivam*, me tua valetudo, C.: *fecissentque utinam: o mihi praeteritos referat si Iuppiter annos*, V.: *utinam nimium ne sit mihi fertilis illa*, V. See Verg. Ecl. ix. 30, 31; x. 48, 49.

(2) *sis bonus o felixque tuis: adsis o placidusque juves et sidera caelo dextra feras*, V.: *doces iter et sacra ostia pandas*, V.: *si certum est facere, facias*, verum *ne post culpam conferas in me*, Ter.: *adsit laetitiae Bacchus dator*, V.

- H. Hortative and Jussive uses: exhorting, commanding &c.

[The principal Hortative use is that which appears in the First Person Plural; the Jussive uses of the Third Persons contain a command more or less stringent. Thus 'naviget' (Aen. iv. 287) is a strong mandate: the instructions in the Georgics given in the Third Persons Conjunctive are precepts rightly called jussive: see G. iii. 300, 329.]

(1) *Eamus omnes: moriamur et in media arma ruamus*, V.: *aegritudinem depellamus: imitemur nostros* Brutos, Camillos, Decios; *gememus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis*, C.: *si cui virtus, adsit et evinctis attolbat brachia palmis*, V.

(2) *Ecferant* quae secum huc attulerant, Ter.: *vincat* utilitas reipublicae: *sit*. sermo lenis, *insit* in eo lepos, C.: vilicus *ne sit* ambulator, sobrius *sit* semper, ad cenam *ne quo eat*, familiam *exerceat*, *ne plus censeat* sapere se quam dominum, *parasitum ne quem habeat*, Cato.

Obs. 1. Although numerous instances of the Second Person are ascribed to the Precative use, there are some which more properly belong to the Jussive; postremus *loquaris*, primus *taceas*: *invenias* argentum &c.

Obs. 2. The most remarkable examples are those which convey this use of the Will-speech Conjunctive into past time by the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses: praediceres, *you should have told me beforehand*: rem tuam curares, *you should have been minding your own business*: dictis, Albane, maneres, *you should have remained true to your word*, O Alban, V.: restitisses, mortem appetisses, C.: ne poposcisses, *you ought not to have demanded*, C. This usage is not confined to the Second Person, but extends also to the rest: animam ipse *dedissem*, atque haec pompa domum me, non Pallanta, *referret*, V. Aen. xi. 162; see iv. 678; x. 854.

Obs. 3. In treating of the Imperative, it has been said that direct prohibition (when not periphrastic with 'cave, noli &c.') is in good Latin prose expressed by 'ne' with Perf. Conj.: quod dubitas *ne feceris*: ne passus sis &c. 'Ne' with Pres. Conj. has been often improperly taken as prohibitive, where the meaning *lest* is that which truly belongs to the particle, as in Hor. *ne forte credas interitura* &c. and often.

Note. When the Conjunctive is subordinate in construction we call it the *Subjunctive*: vellem *adfuisses*: cura ut *valeas*. As such, its English rendering does not differ from that of the Indicative, except in an adverbial final clause: see p. 66.*

III. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

1. Oratio Recta means any statement, command, or question directly put.

Oratio Obliqua means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb in Oratio Recta.

Valeo, An valet? Vale, *an* Oratio Recta: Scin' me valere? Nescio, *an* valeat, Cura ut valeas, contain Oratio Obliqua; *me valere* depending on the Oratio Recta *scin'*; *an* *valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.

* The following lines on Latin Mood may be a help to some young learners:—

1. The *Fact-mood* is employed to mean

IS, WAS, HAD, SHALL-BE, SHALL-HAVE-BEEN :

2. The *Thought-mood* aids it, when we mean

MAY-MIGHT, or WOULD-BE, WOULD-HAVE-BEEN :

3. The *Will-mood* aids, DO-THOU, DO-YE

(Old -to- forms add THEY-MUST and HE)

But Thought-mood forms in aid supply

LET-HIM, -THEM, -US, PRAY-DO, MAY-L

2. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others, which we call *Clauses*, either (A) Coordinate, or (B) Subordinate. •

A. A *Coordinate Clause* is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Clauses are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.* *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat, C.*

B. A *Subordinate Clause* is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence.

Subordinate Clauses are of three kinds:—

(1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.

(1) A *Substantival Clause* is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Clauses belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) Oblique Enuntiation: (b) Oblique Petition: (c) Oblique Interrogation.

(a) The Oblique (or Indirect) Enuntiation is formed generally by the *Infinitive Clause* (Accusative with Infinitive), dependent on verbs '*sentiendi aut declarandi*,' or by '*ut*' with Subjunctive, or '*quod*' with Indicative or Subjunctive. •

Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, '*amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*,' which is Substantival, being the Subject of the Verb '*est*,' and having '*verum*' for its Complement.

Invidia gloriæ comes est, is a Direct Enuntiation; *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, in Apposition to '*hoc*,' the Subject of '*est*,' of which '*commune vitium*' is the Complement.

Calet ignis, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation '*sentimus*,' and the Oblique, '*calere ignem*,' which is the Object of '*sentimus*.'

(b) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with or without the Conjunction '*ut*' or '*ne*' (or by the Infinitive), dependent on Verbs of *desire, request, command, endeavour &c.* *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneat in sententiâ, Oro maneat in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*. •

(c) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, with Subjunctive Mood. •

Quis est? is a Direct Interrogation; *Nescio quis sit, incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, '*quis sit*,' which is the Object of '*nescio*,' and the Subject of '*est*.' •

(2) An *Adverbial Clause* is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how, why, when &c.*

using the term *Subjunctive* to represent the dependent Conjunctive, contenting themselves with the one term for both uses. Many indeed, as Krüger, wisely draw a sharp line of distinction between the independent (*unabhängig*) Conjunctive in a principal sentence (*Hauptsatz*) and the dependent (*abhängig*) in a subordinate sentence (*Nebensatz*, which we, for convenience, render *Clause*); and give names (as in II.) to the various shades of the independent use: but they employ no general term to distinguish the dependent or subordinate use. This is one of the reasons why their teaching on compound construction is vague and unsettled. Holtze says justly (*Syntaxis Priscorum Scriptorum Latinorum*, II. p. 136), 'discernendus autem est conjunctivus *absolutus*, qui non pendet aliunde, ab eo conjunctivo, qui aliunde aptus est. Conjunctivi absoluti tria genera distinguui possunt, conj. *conditionalis*, *potentialis*, *imperatorius* &c.' His *absolute* is our *pure* Conjunctive; and his 'genera' are comprised in the divisions given in II. But when in p. 147 he writes: 'alterum genus conjunctivi id est, quum aliunde aptus est,' his teaching would have been much improved if here too he had given his 'genus' a title by adding, 'quod subjunctivi nomine discernimus.' Holtze's 'Conjunctivus conditionalis' corresponds to paragraphs A, B, C (in II.); his 'potentialis' to D, E; his 'imperatorius' to F, G, H.

2 *Enuntiatio: Interrogatio: Petitio.*

These terms for the three forms of a Latin sentence are technical for the Engl. *statement*, *question*, *will-speech*; Germ. *Aussage*, *Frage*, *Heischesatz*. The first two need no defence, being the only Latin words for those meanings; but there are competing terms for the description of the Conjunctive Will-speech. Holtze gives 'imperatorius'; Madvig (§ 346) 'optative'; some English writers say 'the jussive.' But 'optative' is not well fitted to include commands or concessions, nor 'jussive' to include anything but commands and exhortations. Among adjectives, the most appropriate would perhaps be 'voluntative'; but, as a substantive, the word here given (*Petitio*) renders with sufficient exactness the often used German *Heischesatz*, and fairly combines the shades of will belonging to the use of the Conjunctive for the Imperative.

The accepted use in grammar of the terms *Oratio Recta*, *Oratio Obliqua*, carries with it the use of the terms *Enuntiatio Obliqua* (*indirect statement*), *Interrogatio Obliqua* (*indirect question*), *Petitio Obliqua* (*indirect will-speech*), as appropriately technical: and this implies the important truth, too often forgotten in grammatical teaching, that *Oblique Oration* comprises all these three forms of the dependent sentence, and not *statement* only. Hence it arises that in the *Oblique Narration*, especially of historians, but found in other writers also, these three forms of indirect speech are so frequently combined under the government of one principal verb 'declarandi,' 'imperandi,' or 'rogandi.'

3. *Substantival, Adverbial, Adjectival Clauses.*

In Grammar it is of the first importance to note any difference which appears in likeness, and any likeness which occurs in difference,

Hence it is wrong to withhold the striking facts represented by the three terms now cited, and explained in chapter III. If a learner were asked to name the grammatical subject (nominative) of the verb in each of the three sentences—*Constat hostes abituros esse*—*Sequitur ut hostes abituri sint*—*Gratum est quod hostes abituri sunt*—he would have to answer—*Hostes abituros esse* is the subject of '*constat*'—*ut hostes abituri sint* of '*sequitur*'—*quod hostes abituri sunt* of '*est*:' thus acknowledging that each of the three subject clauses is in the nature of a substantive. Without pursuing exemplification to object clauses, the above examples are sufficient to indicate that the substantival *ut*-clause and *quod*-clause (though partaking, the one of a consecutive, the other of a causal nature) ought nevertheless to be classed distinctly from the adverbial consecutive and causal clauses, such as appear in the following sentences—*Inopia frumenti tanta est ut hostes abituri sint*—*Cives portas floribus coronant, quod hostes abituri sunt*. See also the construction of two clauses with '*tantum abest*' (Consecutive Clauses).

The distinction of Substantival, Adverbial, and Adjectival Clauses is practically recognised by many German scholars, as Krüger, Kühner, Feldbausch, Grieben, Dräger, and others.

4. Suboblique Construction. Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

Suboblique means 'subordinate to Oratio Obliqua' expressed in a single word: this is its value and its *raison d'être*. As to the other term—in all those constructions of the Subjunctive after a Finite Verb, of which may be taken as a type; *Laudat Africanum Panætius quod fuerit abstinent*—it seems manifest that the Mood depends on an implied Oratio Obliqua (in that place, '*se laudare ait*'), and that the term 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua' expresses better and more concisely than any other the principle of the construction.

Note. The propriety of referring this construction to the doctrine of Oratio Obliqua, of making its mood a corollary to the principle of mood in subordination to Oratio Obliqua, and therefore calling it 'Virtually Suboblique,' may be shown by comparison of a few examples.

- (1) *Reperio quattuor causas, cur senectus misera videatur: unam, quod avocet a rebus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam, quod privet omnibus fere voluptatibus; quartam, quod haud procul absit a morte.*—Cic. Cato M. 5.

Why are '*avocet, faciat, privet, absit*?' subjunctive? Evidently (as appears from '*videatur*') because '*reperio quattuor causas*' = '*reperio quattuor causas adlatas*;' i.e. because it contains a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here cannot be mistaken.

- (2) *Tum liquidas corvi presso ter gutture voces
Aut quater ingeminant &c.
Haud equidem credo, quia sit divinitus illis
Ingenium &c.*—Verg. G. I. 410 &c.

Why is *sit* subjunctive? Evidently because with '*credo*' must be supplied '*corvos ingeminare*' &c.; i.e. on account of a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here again is obvious.

- (3) Et quereris quod non, Cinna, bibamus idem.—Mart. xi. 37.

Why is *bibamus* subjunctive? Evidently because one who complains says that he does complain: 'quereris' = 'ais te queri.' Again the contained Oratio Obliqua is obvious.

- (4) Let a different instance be taken.

Mercatiquē solum, facti de nomine Byrsam,
Taurino quantum possent circumdare tergo.—V. Aen. i. 367.

Why does the subjunctive *possent* stand here, when *poterant* could have been written grammatically? Because the poet refers the covenant to the mind and act of the purchasers contained in *mercati*. They purchased ground, 'pacti tantum fore,' stipulating that it should be so much as (*quantum* &c.) they could surround by a bull's hide. Here, and in many similar places, it is just to say that Oratio Obliqua (that is, an indirect expression of thought) is implied, and that its tenour can be certainly stated; not in the precise words, as in the former passages, but in such as convey the sense.

EXCURSUS II. The following remarks are subjoined as the result of long Latin studies and teaching experience.

1. Arrangement of topics in their just sequence, and a wise choice of terms, are points of signal importance in grammar.

Obs. It is often more really pedantic to avoid technical terms than to use them. Thus it is mere mischievous pedantry to substitute 'indirect speech' for the well-known term Oratio Obliqua.

2. Simple and compound construction should be kept apart in a Latin Grammar; but the use of Accusative Subject with Infinitive should be shortly noticed in the former division, while its full development is kept for the latter, in which it claims the first place as 'the Infinitive Clause.' See §§ 93, 94, 140: and above in III.
3. The doctrine of the Verb Infinite, and of Moods and Tenses, should be taught, as belonging to the Simple Sentence, before teaching the doctrine of Compound Construction, and Mood therein.

Obs. This principle has been ignored by many grammarians, especially by Madvig, to the great detriment of their usefulness as teachers of grammar.

4. The principles set forth in this Appendix, and defended in the first Excursus, have been practically tested during 35 years; and no attempt has ever been made to prove them unsound. As they belong to an abstruse subject, they cannot be mastered without some expense of time and thought. But this will deter no student who desires to know well what he professes to know at all. The styles of the greatest Latin authors require a knowledge of these principles for their just appreciation.

IV. OUTLINE OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

(A.) SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

I. ENUNTIATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Statement).

1. Infinitive Clause (Infin. with Accus. Subject):

(1) as Subject, with the copula 'est,' and with Verbs Impersonal or Passive (*fas est, fama est, verum est, necesse est &c., constat, placet, nuntiatur &c.*)

(2) as Object, with 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi' (*audio, video, credo &c.; aio, dico, nego &c.*);

(3) in Apposition to Nouns and Pronouns;

(1) *Facinus est civem vinciri.*—*Certum est nivem frigere.*—*Nuntiatum est Scipionem adesse.*—*Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.*

(2) *Audivimus Pompeios desedissee.*—*Aiunt consulem reditum esse.*—*Spero (polliceor) me tibi causam probaturum.*

(3) *Illud molesto fero, me nihil habere tuarum litterarum.*

(a) *Tene hoc, Atti, dicere?*—*Me non cum bonis esse?*

2. Ut-clause with Subjunctive (for Infin. Clause), chiefly as Subject.

Reliquum est (restat) ut egomet mihi consulam.—*Mos erat ut, pace facta, Jani templum clauderetur.*—*Extremum illud est, ut te obscrem.*

(a) *Te ut ulla res frangat?* *tu ut umquam te corrigas?*

3. Quod-clause (for Infin. Clause) with Indicative chiefly.

Gratum est quod patriae civem dedisti.—*Vitium est quod ad exempla vivimus.*—*Mitto quod invidiam subieris.*

II. PETITIO OBLIQUA (indirect Will-speech).

1. Verbs of *permitting, wishing, praying, exhorting, commanding*, take Subjunctive with *ut, ne*, or omitting Conjunction.

(1) As Subject. *Permissum est consuli ut scriberet duas legiones.*—*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.*—*Nuntiatum est Antonio ne Brutum obsideret; a Mutina discederet.*

(2) As Object. *Sine te exorem.*—*Sivi ut animum expleret suum.*—*Vellem ipse pater spectator adesset.*—*Vin' experiamur?*—*Precor ut haec castra ne pollui sinatis.*—*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.*—*Hortantur socii Cretam proavosque petamus.*—*Jubeto ut certet Amyntas.*—*Jube maneat.*

(3) In Apposition. *Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.*—*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.*

2. Verbs of *caring, striving, doing, effecting* take the same constructions, forming elegant periphrases.

- (1) Videndum est *ut* re nostra bene *utamur*.—Mea magni interest te *ut videam*.—Curandum est *ut nequid desit*.—
 " Potin' *ut* mihi molestus *ne sis*.—Fieri non potest, *ut* quis Romae sit, quum est Athenis.—Per fetiales fiebat, *ut* justum conciperetur bellum. (2) Si fata fuissent *ut caderem* merui manu.—Vide *ne absit* benignitas.—Cavit *ut* omnia in sua potestate essent.—Ego *nequid* nocere *possint* caverō.—Caveto disciplinam temere *cont. mnas*.—Curata fac *sint* omnia.—Pol me fecisse arbitror *ne* id mihi merito eveniret.—Vos effici posse sine Deo negatis, *ut* natura tot mundos effectura sit, efficiat, effecerit.—Potes efficere *ut* male moriar; *ne* moriar non potes.—Nolo committere *ut* in scribendo neglegens fuisse videar. (3) Danda est opera, *ut effugiamus*.—Id agit vir, *ut se conservet*.

- (a) Predications of *fearing* take *ne*, *ne non*, and *ut* for *ne non*:
 Ea timet *ne* deseras se.—Verebamini *ne non* id facerem.—Metuo *ut* credant.—Id paves, *ne ducas* tu illam, tu autem *ut ducas*.

- (β) *Licet*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, omit Conjunction:
 Ludas licet.—Mihi patronus *sim* necesse est.—Valeat possessor oportet.

- (γ) Verbs of *wishing* (also *oportet*) may take Perf. Passive Infinitive:
 Noliem factum.—Mansum oportuit.—Rempublicam defensam volo.

III. INTERROGATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Question) with Subjunctive after oblique Interrogative Pronouns and Particles.

- (1) As Subject. In beneficio videndum est *quando* et *cui* et *quemadmodum* et *quare* demus.
 (2) As Object. *Quid* agas, *ubi* futurus sis, *quales* res nostras reliqueris, cura *ut* sciamus.—*Ut* placeat juveni percunctare, *utque* cohorti.—Nescio *an* venerit.—Nescio *an non* venerit.
 (3) In Apposition. Ipse *qui* sit, *utrum* sit *an non* sit, id quoque nescit. (See Verg. Ecl. vi.; G_x i. 1 &c. Hor. Epist. 15, 1–25.)

(B) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

I. Consecutive Clauses (*so that*).

Ut (*so that*), *ut non*, *ut nihil*, *ut nullus*, *ut nemo* &c., take Subjunctive.

- (1) After Demonstratives *talis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ita*, *tam*, *adeo* &c.
 Quis tam demens est *ut* sua voluntate maereat?—Decori vis ea est *ut* ab honesto non *queat* separari.—Titus ita facilis fuit *ut* nemini quicquam negaret.

- (2) Omitting Demonstrative.
 Arboribus consita Italia est, *ut* tota pomarium videatur.

- (3) After Comparative and *quam*.
 Isocrates majore ingenio est *quam ut* cum Lysia comparetur.

α. Tantum abest with two Clauses: (1) *subj.*; (2) *adverbial*.
 Tantum abest *ut* id velim, *ut* nihil magis deprecor.

II. Final Clauses (*ut*, *that*, *in order that*; *ne*, *lest*, *that not*).

Ut, ne, nequis, nequando &c., take Subjunctive.

Ut scias, latine jam loquar.—Laterem lavas, *ut ita dicam*.—Legum idcirco servi sumus, *ut liberi esse possimus*.—Scipio rus abiit, *ne ad causam dicendam adesset*.—Ulciscar, *ut ne impune in nos intuleris*.

(Particles of other classes often contain an idea of purpose: such are *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, sometimes *si* &c.)

III. Causal Clauses (*because*, *since* &c.)

1. *Quod*, *quando*, *quia*, *quandoquidem*, *quoniam*, *quatenus*, *siquidem*, normally take Indic., but Subjunctive after Oratio Obliqua.

Adsunt propterea quod officium sequuntur; tacent quia periculum metuunt.—Dicite, *quandoquidem* in molli consedimus herba.—*Quoniam* jam nox est, discedite.

2. *Quum* (*since*, implying mental reflexion) with Subjunctive

Quae *quum* ita sint, quid est quod de Archiae civitate dubitetis, praesertim *quum* in aliis quoque civitatibus fuerit adscriptus?

(c) For the same reason *non quod* usually requires Subjunctive.

Pugiles ingemiscunt, *non quod doleant* animove succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce corpus intenditur.

(*Postquam*, *dum*, *donec*, *si*, *siquidem*, may contain causal force.)

IV. Temporal Clauses (*when*, *as soon as*, *as often as* &c.).

1. *Quum*, *quando*, *quotiens*, *simul*, *ut*, *simul atque*, *ubi*, *postquam*, normally take Indic., but Subj. after Oratio Obliqua.

Tua res agitur, *pauces quum* proximus ardet.—*Ut* vidi, *ut* perii!
—Miserum est fodere, *ubi* sitis fauces tenet.—Horreo, *postquam* asperi hanc.

- a. On *quum* with Subj. In narration, see Rule § 153 (1): *quum* *adesset*, *quum* *venisset* &c.

2. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad* (*whilst*, *until*), *antequam*, *priusquam* (*before*), often take Indicative, but, when they contain a sense of purpose, or after Oratio Obliqua, they take Subjunctive.

(1) *Dum* coquitur, interimpotabimus.—Manete *dum* redeo.—Haud desinam *donec* perfecero.—*Donec* eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.—*Donec* rediit Marcellus, de comitiis silentium fuit.—Cato, *quoad* vixit, virtutum laude crevit.—*Antequam* opprimit lux, erumpamus.

(2) Expectate *dum* consul fiat Caeso.—Dies praestituta est *quoad* referret.—Trepidabant, *donec* timor quietem fecisset.—Hannibalonia erat expertus *priusquam* excederet pugna.—Tragoedi, *antequam* pronuntiant, vocem excitant.

V. Conditional Clauses (*if, unless, provided that &c.*).

1. *Si, nisi* have three chief forms; with Indicative chiefly* in the first, Conjunctive in the second and third forms.

(1) *Si vis potes.*—*Faciam si potero.*—*Bonus si esse vis, bene erit tibi*—*Siquid erit, fac sciam.*—*Siquid erat grande vas, adferebant.*—*Peream si falsa loquor.*—*Ne vivam ni vera loquor.*—*Ania us rediit si mecum servatum fides.*—*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcumque infundis, aëscit.*—*Hanc redde, nisi si mavis vi eripi.*—*Mirum ni illa salva est et ego perii.*—*Faciet, nisi caveo.*

(2) *Si di curent, bene bonis sit, male malis.*—*Sescenta sunt quas memorem si sit otium.*—*Si monstret, gratiam incoat.*—*Si scieris, improbe foceris, nisi monueris.*—*Non negem, si noverim.*—*Quid si taceas?*—*Redeam? non, si me obsecret.*—*Si a corona relictus sim, non queam dicere.*—*Faciat nisi caveam (caverim).*

(3) *Valerem, si hic maneres.*—*Non possem vivere, nisi in litteris viverem.*—*Si acum, credo, quaereres, acum invenisses, si appareret.*—*Si id scissem, numquam huc tetulissem pedem.*—*Si ante voluisses, esses.*—*Ni nossem causam, crederem vera hunc loqui.*—*Faceret nisi caverem (cavissem).*

(a) In sentences of form (3), when *nisi* is used, the principal verb is sometimes Indicative, as an idiom or for the sake of emphasis.

Nec venit, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent.—*Me truncus inlatus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset.*—*Angoribus eram confectus, nisi eis restitidissem.*—*Prohibere non poterat, nisi proelio decertare vellet.*—*Lababar longius, nisi me retinuisses.*

(β) *Si* is used to imply *purpose, wish*:

Si fallere possit amorem.—*Si nunc se . . . ramus ostendat,* Verg.

(Temporal and Conditional Sentences require large exemplification in order to be thoroughly known.)

2. *Dum, modo, dummodo, tantum, tantummodo, modo ut, dum ne, modo ne &c.* (*provided that &c.*) take Subjunctive:

Oderint dum metuant.—*Scies, modo ut tacere possis.*—*Gallia, belli patitur injurias, dummodo repellat servitutem.*—*Sed patiare licet, dum ne contempta relinquant.*—*Velis tantummodo, expugnahis.*

* In these Compound Sentences the Clause containing the condition (*si, nisi*) is called *Protasis*, its answer in the Principal Sentence *Apodosis*. Of their three chief forms, that which has Indicative in the Protasis has been called by some grammarians 'Sumptio Dandi' because it suggests neither probability nor improbability: the second, (Conjunctive Pres. or Perf. answered by Conjunctive), 'Sumptio Dandi,' as suggesting a probable or, at least, possible case: the third (Conjunctive Imperf. or Plup., answered by one of the two), Sumptio Ficti, as suggesting a case of a purely imaginary and unreal kind. See MANUAL.

VI. Concessive Clauses (*although, whereas*).

(The demonstrative *tamen* often accompanies.)

1. *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, as they contain *si*, mainly follow its rules.
Tamen etsi res bene gesta est, corde suo trepidat.—*Memini, tametsi nullus moneas.*
2. *Quamquam, utut*, prefer Indicative :
Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.—*Uti erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.*
3. *Licet, quum, ut* (meaning *although*), take Subjunctive. Also *quamvis* usually, but not when it contains a matter of fact.
Quod turpe est, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum non fit.—*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.*—*Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.*—*Polio amat nostram, quamvis est rustica, musam.*

VII. Comparative Clauses (*as if; as though*).

Tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi, tamquam si, ut si, ac si, quam si &c., require Subjunctive :

Parvi primo ortu jacent, *tamquam* sine animo sint.—*Natura cornua dedit arietum generi, ceu caestus daret.*—*Hujus rem ut tueare, aequae te peto, ac si mea negotia essent.*—*Sic Plancius quaestor est factus, quam si esset summo loco patus.*—*Stultum est in luctu capillum sibi evellere, quasi calvitio maeror levetur.*

Note 1. Conjunctions are often suppressed :

Decies centena dedisses huic parco. paucis contento, quinque diebus nil erat in oculis.—*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.*—*Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.*

Also in Comparative Sentences, when *tamquam, ceu, velut* are used alone, *si* must be understood ; and when *si* is used (as in *ac si, quam si* &c.), its true apodosis is suppressed. 'Aequae te peto, ac si mea negotia essent' means 'aequae te peto ac peterem, si mea negotia essent ;' just as in Virgil (Aen. ii. 522), 'non si ipse meus nunc adforet Hector' means 'non egeret si' &c.

Note. 2. Many of the Particles cited (*nisi, etsi, quamquam, quamvis, tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi*) can be used, like *ut* (*as*), with annexive power, without affecting mood.

Labienuſ juravit se, *nisi* victorem, in castra non rediturum.—*Etsi* non iniquum, certe tamen triste senatusconsultum factum est.—*Haec, mira quamquam, credebantur.*—*Res bello gesserat, quamvis* reipublicae calamitosaſ, attamen magnas.—*Nostine* hominem ? *Tamquam* te.—*Litteras graecas sic avidè arripui, quasi* diuturnam sitim explere cupiens.—*Demosthenis orationes converti, non ut* interpretes, sed *ut* orator.

(C) ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

Qui quas quod, as a mere Relative (when not suboblique), takes Indicative; bis dat, *qui cito* dat. See p. 156.

I. It is largely used as Consecutive, with Subjunctive Verb.

(1) After *q.* Demonstrative *talis*, *is* &c.

(2) Omitting Demonstrative, after words of various kinds: Comparative and *quam*; *dignus*, *indignus* &c.; *est*, *sunt*, *invenio*, *reperio*, *habeo*, and many more verbs; *aliquis*, *pauci*, *multi*, *solus*, with indefinite sense; *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil* &c., and Interrogatives: in short, wherever it implies *talis ut*, of such kind that.

(1) Non is sum *qui* his rebus *delecter*.—Nihil tanti est *quo* *condamur* libertatem.

(2) *Majora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset*.—*Dignus est qui imperet*. Est *qui* *vinci possit*.—*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum*.—*Habes qui adsideat, fomenta parat*. Est aliquid *quod* non *oporteat*, etiamsi *licet*.—Solus es, Gai Caesar, in *cujus* victoria nemo *ceciderit* nisi armatus. Nihil est *quod* tam *deceat* quam constantia.*

a. *Quod* sciam, so far as I know: *quod* meminerim.

II. *Qui*, with Final Sense, takes Subjunctive:

Litteras misi, *quibus et placarem eum et monerem*.

a. Thus *quod* for *ut eo*, especially with Comparatives:

Ager novatur, *quo meliores* fructus *edat*.

b. Hence the use of *quominus*. See below.

III. *Qui*, with Causal Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

Miseret tui me, *qui hunc facias* inimicum tibi.

Multaque se incusat, *qui non acceperit* ultro

Dardanium Aenean, *generumque adsciverit* urbi.

a. So *ut qui*, *quippe qui*. The latter rarely has Indic.

b. Observe *non quod*, *non quo*: also *non quin* for *non quia non*.

Appellatur insignia, *non quod sola ornent* sed *quod excellant*.

The mood of *excellant* arises from Virtual Oratio Obliqua in *appellatur*. See (D). 2; (B). III. a.

IV. *Qui*, with Concessive Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

Egomet, *qui leviter graecas litteras attigissem*, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.

V. Relative Particles, *quo*, *qua*, *quomodo*, *ubi*, *quæ*, *cur*, *quatenus*, *unde*, are used with Mood on the same principles as *qui*:

Perge *quo* coepisti. Digna res est *ubi* nervos *intendas*.—Erat nihil *cur* properato opus *esset*.—Est *quatenus* amicitiae dari *venia possit*.—Dum est *unde* jus civile *discatur*, adulescentes in disciplina tradidit.

* *Is qui*, *est qui*, *sunt qui*, take Indic., when *qui* is definite, not implying *talis ut*. See Hor. C. 1. 1, 19.

NOTE. The Conjunctions *quominus*, *quin*.

1. *Quominus*, after predications of hindrance, takes Subjunctive:

Senectus non impedit quominus litteris utamur.—Non recusat *quominus* poenam subiret. Per Afranium stetit *quominus* dimicaretur.

- a. *Ne* after such Verbs forbids or hinders the action:

Pontus erat vetitus *ne* mergeret aequore terram.—Sulpicius intercesserat *ne* exsules reducerentur.

2. *Quin* (1), for *qui non*, after Negative and Interrogative words, follows the rules of *qui* consecutive:

Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari.—Nullum intermisi diem *quin* scriberem.—Quis fundum colit *quin* sues habeat?

- (2) For *qui non*, *ut non*, after a negation or question of doubt, stoppage, cause &c.:

Non dubito *quin* fuerint ante Homerum poetae.—Nec requies *quin* mox pomis exuberet annus.—Facere non possum *quin* cotidie ad te mittam.—Prorsus nihil abest *quin* sim miserrimus.—*Quin* ad diem decedam nulla causa est.—Quis dubitet *quin* in virtute divitiarum positae sint? Quid est causae *quin* decemviri coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere?

(D) SUBOBLIQUE CONSTRUCTION.

1. If a Finite Verb is really subordinated to Oratio Obliqua by any Conjunction or Relative, it will assume the Subjunctive, as the Mood of Thought.

- (1) *Ais*, *quoniam* sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.—Scito me, *postquam* in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.—Omnes intellegunt, *si* salvi esse velint, necessitati esse parendum.—Simile veri est, non ex eisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, *quamquam* eadem semper gens bellum intulerit.—Caesar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse *quod* quieverim.—Epicurum arbitror omnia tradidisse, *quae* pertinerent ad bene beateque vivendum.—Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, *cui*, *quod* opus sit, ipsi veniat in mentem; prope accedere illum, *qui* alterius bene inventis obtemperet.—Ariovistus respondit: *siquid* ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; *siquid* ille a se velit, illum ad se venire oportere.

- (2) Illud omnes pro certo habent, ut, *quemadmodum* ratione recte fiat, sic ratione peccetur.—Caesar hortatus est milites, *ne* ea, *quae* accidissent, graviter ferrent.

- (3) Solon, *quam* interrogaretur, cur nullum supplicium constitueret in eum *qui* parentem necasset, respondit, se id neminem facturum putasse.

- (a) If the Finite Clause does not really form a part of the Oratio Obliqua, but is interposed or added by a writer or speaker

for explanation or as a mere epithet, it need not assume the Subjunctive; for it suggests fact, not thought.

Atticum gloriantem audivi, se numquam cum sorore fuisse in similitate, *quam* prope aequalem habebat.—Xerxes litteris certiora feci, id agi ut pons, *quem* in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur.—Eloquendi vis efficit ut ea, *quae* ignoramus, discere, et ea, *quae* scimus, alios docere possimus.

(β) On the idiom of *dum* see § 153 (2).

Quanto laudabilius periturum Pisonem, *dum* rempublicam amplectitur, *dum* auxilia libertati invocat!

2. When a Principal Verb, by its own meaning (as *accusare*, *laudare*, *queri*, *vituperare*), or by its context, *implies a statement or thought* on the part of its Subject (that is, implies Oratio Obliqua), the Finite Verb subordinated to it by a Conjunction or Relative will be Subjunctive, as Virtually Suboblique.

(1) Laudat Africanum Panaetius, *quod fuerit* abstinens.—Phalereus Demetrius Periclem vituperat, *quod* tantam pecuniam in praeclara illa propylaea *conjecerit*.—Falso queritur de natura sua genus humanum, *quod* imbecilla atque aevi brevis forte potius quam virtute *regatur*.—Socrates accusatus est *quod* *corrumperet* juventutem.—Sapiens non dubitat, *si* ita melius *sit*, migrare de vita.—Nemo umquam oratorem, *quod* latine loqueretur, admiratus est.—Recte Socrates exsecrari eum solebat, *qui* primus utilitatem ab honestate *sejunctisset*.

(2) Darius ejus pontis, *dum* ipse *abesset*, custodes reliquit.—Caesar ab Helvetiis pacem petentibus servos, *qui* ad eos *perfugerant*, poposcit.—Volsci, *quia* nondum ab Aequis *venissent* auxilia, dimicare non ausi.—Alium rogantes regem misere ad Jovem, inutilis *quoniam esset* qui fuerat datus.—At enim memoria minuitur. Credo, *nisi* eam *exerceas*.—Cotta libros mihi legavit, *quos* frater suus *reliquisset*.—Prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus *quos haberent*.—Fit Beroe... *cui* *gratus* et quondam nomen natique *fuissent*, V. Aen. v. 620. Comp. ix. 289, where 'quod nequeam' is subordinate to the Or. Obl. implied in 'testis' (me hanc insalutatam linquere).

(α) A Verb which implies Oratio Obliqua, when used in the Third Person, does not necessarily imply it when used in the First. Thus, 'laudo te *quod paruisti*' is strictly right. But a Verb in the First Person may imply Oratio Obliqua, as 'credo' in Ex. 5 of (2), and in Virgil, G. i. 415.

(β) By a Latin idiom, 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi,' when subordinate to the Indicative, often assume the Subjunctive.

Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulturae intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, *quod* religione se impediri *dicerent*.—Qui e Gallia veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, *quod* *negent* te percunctantibus respondere.

3. A Finite Verb subordinate to a Subjunctive is usually Subjunctive.

Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, *quae* secum *commentatus esset*, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, *quibus cogitavisset*.

4. By the peculiar Ellipsis called Zeugma, one Verb takes various constructions, to all which it is not alike suitable.

Sociis tunc arma capessant
Edico et dira bellum cum gente gerendum.

V. Aen. iii. 234 (see iv. 288-294).

The three constructions of Oratio Obliqua (statement, will-speech, and question) are thus often blended by historians (especially by Caesar, Livy, Tacitus) when they report speeches in that indirect form, which is called Oblique Narration.

- (1) Thrasybulus, quum exercitus triginta tyrannorum fugeret, magna voce exclamat: *Cur se victorem fugiant?* Civium illam meminere aciem, non hostium esse: triginta se dominis, non civitati, bellum inferre. Just. v. 10.
- (2) Bomilcar Jugurtham monet atque lacrimans obtestatur, uti aliquando sibi liberisque et genti Numidarum optime merenti provideat; omnibus proeliis sese victos, agrum vastatum, multos mortales captos aut occisos, regni opes comminutas esse, satis saepe jam et virtutem militum et fortunam tentatam: caveat ne illo cunctante Numidao sibi consulant. Sall. Jug. 62.
- (3) Consules scripta ad Caesarem mandata remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias iturum. Caes. B. C. i. 10.
- (4) Caesar centuriones vehementer in eum cavavit, primum, quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent: Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimo populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur, aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Caes. B. G. i. 40.
- (a) Historians in Oblique Narration sometimes place an indirect question in the Infinitive Clause; sometimes they use the Infinitive Clause in dependence on a Conjunction.
Plebs fremit: *Quid se vivere, quid in parto civium censeret*, si, quod duorum hominum virtute partum sit, id obtinere universi non possint. Liv. vii. 18 (see i. 59).
Tribuni aiebant: fugero senatum testes, tabulas publicas, census cujusque; quum interim obaeratum plebem objectari aliis atque aliis hostibus. Liv. vi. 27.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

I. On the Latin Infinitive (p. 140).

1. As a Verb-noun:

Subject (a) of the Impersonal Verbs oportet &c. (p. 145);

(b) Of est with Adjectives and Substantives (meum, tuum, nostrum, impium, miserum, utile, aequum &c.) est; (sapientis,

insipientis &c.) est; (animus, consilium, copia, fas, nefas, statum, mos, operae pretium, potestas, religio, sententia, studium, tempus &c.) est; (cordi, curae, moris &c.) est.

2. Prolatively:

(a) With Participles and Adjectives (chiefly in poetry):

Paratus, peditus, avidus, certus, dignus, felix, nescius, solers &c. &c.

(b) With Passive Verbs of copulative nature (arguor, colligor, comperior, credor, demonstror, dicor, existimor, feror, fingor, indicor, insimulor, intellegor, invenior, iudicor, jubeor, memoror, narror, negor, nuntior, ostendor, perhibeor, praedicor, probor, prohibeor, putor, reperior, sinor, trador, vetor, and especially videor). See p. 140.

(c) With a large body of extensible Verbs:

(1) Intransitive of *power, skill, will, custom; effort, plan, design; haste, delay; beginning, proceeding, ceasing; fearing; scorning; joy, sorrow* (possum, nequeo, scio, nescio &c.; volo, nolo, studeo, audeo &c.; soleo, adsuesco &c.; cogito, memini, meditor, conor, incumbo, insto, laboro, molior, contendo, tendo; paro, peto, quaero; decerno, statuo &c.; consilium capio, festino &c.; propero &c.; cesso, cunctor, dubito, moror &c.; coepli, incipio &c.; pergo &c.; absisto, desisto, desino, natto &c.; metuo, timeo, vereor, horreo, paveo, trepido &c.; aspernor, dedignor, caveo, fugio, gravor &c.; gaudeo, laetor, doleo &c.

(2) Transitive and trajective Verbs of *allowing, denying, hindering; wishing, praying, advising, teaching, exhorting, commanding, forbidding* &c. which may have an Object noun with an Infinitive (permitto, do, sino, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, oro &c.; hortor &c.; moneo &c.; suadeo, persuadeo &c.; adigo, subigo, impello, ago, cogo, stimulo &c.; jubeo, impero &c.; prohibeo &c.; veto).

II. On Enuntiatio Obliqua (indirect Statement), p. 161.

Indirect Statement by the Infinitive Clause (Accus. with Inf.) may accompany most predications of *perception, feeling, opinion, or assertion*.

1. As Subject, with the Impersonals shown p. 145, b. 2, and some others:

with *est* joined to many Adjectives, Substantives, and Adverbs: such as, certum, credibile, decorum, falsum, mirum, miserum, non dubium, perspicuum, probabile, usitatum, verum, veri simile &c. &c.; fama, fas, jus, nuntius, rumor, suspicio, tempus, testis &c. &c.; aegre, palam, satis &c.

2. As Object, with

(1) Accipio, audio, agnosco, animadverto, comperio, intellego, sentio, video &c.; cogito, memini, recordor &c.; arbitror, censeo (*deem*), credo, duco, existimo, iudico, opinor, puto, reor, suspicio

&c.; confido, diffido, dubito &c.; gaudeo, laetor, angor, doleo, aegre (moleste) fero &c.; indignor, miror, queror, and others. (On 'spero' see below.)

(2) Dico, praedico, aio, addo, respondeo, clamo, memoro, nuntio, perhibeo, fero (*report*), narro, prodo, trado, cano &c.; fateor, confiteor, ostendo, gratulor &c.; affirmo, confirmo, arguo, contendendo, dissuero, doceo (*inform*) &c.; nego, infitior, inñtias eo, diffiteor &c.; glorior, mentior, fingo, facio (= fingo), simulo, dissimulo &c.; pono (*propose*), probro, colligo, concludo, efficio (*prove*), teneo (*maintain*), and others.

(3) Spero, despero &c.; polliceor, promitto, recipio &c.; juro &c.; minor, miror &c. regularly take Fut. Inf., but are found with Pres. Inf.; spero often with posse.

(4) The Inf. Clause may stand with many of the Will-verbs, which take other constructions also: permitto, patior, sino &c.; moneo, persuadeo, postulo &c.; cogo, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; prohibeo, veto, impedio (rare) &c.

(a) On the Inf. Clause without preceding verb, used to express indignant surprise:—on the suppression of an indefinite or pronoun subject in the clause:—on Greek idioms occurring in Latin:—on the convenient substitution of Passive for Active Clause:—and on the construction of Copulative Verbs Passive personally with Simple Inf. (p. 140), see MANUAL OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION, § 15, 6-10, with the examples.

(B) On the *Ut*-clause and the *Quod*-clause (for Inf. Clause), see MANUAL, §§ 16, 17.

III. On Petitio Obliqua (indirect Will-speech), p. 162.

The chief Will-speech Verbs are:

(1) Permitto, concedo, patior, sino, do, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, volo, malo, nolo &c.; oro, rogo, peto, posco, postulo, flagito, precor, quaeso, contendo, oscuro, obtestor, veneror &c.; hortor, moneo, moveo, persuadeo, suadeo, cogo, impello, indaco, auctor sum &c.; censeo, decerno, edico, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; sancio &c.; dico, mitto, nuntio, respondeo, scribo &c., implying command; prohibeo, veto, impedio &c.; with some compounds of these, and other forms, lex est, placet, visum est, licet, necesse est, oportet &c.

(2) Caveo, curo, studeo, video, provideo, id ago, operam do, enitor &c.; facio, efficio, perficio, committo, consequor, adipiscor, assequor, impetro, pervinco &c.; with other forms, fit, fieri potest, potis est &c. All the constructions of Verbs (1) (2) are of Final nature.

(a) See MANUAL (§§ 18-25) for examples of these Verbs, and of those which express Fear, Caution, Desire: of Impersonal predications, and of elegant periphrases with facio, committo &c.

IV. On Interrogatio Obliqua (indirect Question), p. 162.

Indirect Questions contain a Subjunctive introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle dependent on various predications.

The pronouns and particles are:

Quis, qualis, quot, quantus, uter, quotus, unde, ubi, quando, cur, quare, quo, qua, quam, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum, with some others.

The leading predications are those of *stating, hearing, knowing, remembering, forgetting, inquiring, doubting, wondering, caring, considering, determining, concerning*, and the like. Most of the Latin Verbs forming such predications are included in the lists already given; others will be easily recognised in the course of reading, and need not be specified here.

Obs. The Subjunctive in an indirect question is (like the Mood with *ut, so that*) an idiom of classical Latin, differing from Greek and from English usage. Greek has *οἶδα ὃ τι βούλει*, English, *I know what you want*, where Latin says, *scio quid velis*. The oldest Latin writers often used the Indicative in this construction.

- (a) The Latin Verbs in these classes ought to be well studied. Most of them take various constructions: on which see MANUAL, § 27.

V. On the Consecution of Tenses.

The Law of the Consecution of Tenses (§ 155), that Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic, is illustrated by all the foregoing examples, especially by those of *Petitio* and *Interrogatio Obliqua*, Consecutive and Final Clauses. The following scheme shows it simply:

P. Rogo	quid agas, egeris, acturus
Oportet me scire	sis.
Rogabo	quid agatur, actum sit, agendum sit.
Oportebit me scire	
H. Rogabam	
Oportebat me scire	quid ageres, egisses, acturus esses.
Rogavi	[quid ageretur, actum esset, agendum esset.
Oportuit me scire	
Rogaveram	
Oportuerat me scire	

- (a) A Present-Past *rogavi* (*I have inquired*) is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution: but Cicero generally gives it Historic Consecution.

- (β) A Historic Present is often used with Historic Consecution: but not necessarily.

- (γ) The Infinitive acquires conditional power by means of the Future Participle:

Scio eum venturum esse si possit,
I know that he will come if he can.

Sciebam eum venturum esse si posset,
I knew that he would come if he could.

Sciebam eum venturum fuisse si potuisset,
I knew that he would have come if he could.

This subject, with the use of Reflexive Pronouns in Clauses, is fully treated in the MANUAL, §§ 59 &c.

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

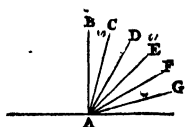
[N. E., Notes on Etymology. N. S., Notes on Syntax. N. P., Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

A.

- Ablativus* (auferre, to take away), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). §§ 110–125. See *Case*.
- *Absolutus Ablativus* (absolvere, to release), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands released, as it were, from government. § 125.
- Accident*, any change happening (accidens) to a word. § 11 (3).
- Accusativus* (accusare, to accuse), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πτῶσις. § 95.
- Activa vox* (agere, to do), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses 'doing.'
- Adjectivum*, Adjective (quod adicitur Substantivo), Gr. ἐπιθετον, epithet. §§ 32, 87, 89.
- Adverbial and Adjectival Clauses*. N. S. Appendix ii. pp. 158, 162, 166.
- Adverbium*, Adverb, 'quia ad Verbum est' Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.
- Alphabet*, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.
- * *Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.
- Anomala*, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (à, not; ὅμαλος, even). §§ 25, 78.
- Apodosis* (ἀποδιδόναι, to render back), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, to stretch before). N. S. p. 164.
- Appositum* (apponere, to place beside), an Apposite, or Substantive placed beside another in Qualitative relation. §§ 87, 90. See *Attributum*.
- Asyndeton* (à, not; συνδέειν, to bind together), the annexing of words without a conjunction.
- *Attractio* (attrahere, to draw to), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. i. E. 2.
- Attributum* (attribuere, to assign), Attribute; an Adjective assigned to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89. The Qualitative relation of an Attribute or Apposite to the words they qualify may be
- (1) Epithetic: Croesus dives; Croesus rex.
 - (2) Attributively Enthetic (see *Enthesis*): Croesus, regum divissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur.
 - (3) Adverbially Enthetic: Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit.
 - • •
 - (4) Complemental: Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.

C.

Casus (cadere, to fall), Case. Gr. πρῶσις. A. By Case is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (*casus*, from cado)



is, literally, a *falling*. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as AB, and likened the other forms to lines *falling* away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, AC, AD, AE, AF, &c. These they called *Cases*; and their series, the *declension*, *declining*, or *sloping*

down, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) *Casus Rectus*, the *Upright Case*, and the others (except the Vocative) *Casus Obliqui*, *Oblique Cases*; whereas the *Stem* (or Crude-form) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the *Stem nuc-* (walnut-tree) the Cases are: N.V. *nuc-s* (= *nux*), Acc. *nuc-em*, G. *nuc-is*, D. *nuc-i*, Ab. *nuc-e*.

B. The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, *mihī*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *ubi*, *ibi*, together with the Cases in *-bus*, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

C. The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar. *Causalis Clausula*, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quum*, &c. § 152. Appendix II. p. 163.

Character (*χαρακτήρ*, an impressed mark), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.

Circumstantive Relation, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.

Clausula (claudere, to inclose), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.

Collectiva (colligere, to gather together), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. E. 3.

Comparativa Clausula, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tamquam, ut si, &c. P. 165.

**Complementum* (complere, to complete), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is Copulative (or Factive). §§ 87, 93, 99. N. S. II. See *Predicate*.

**Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. F.

Concessiva Clausula (concedere, to grant), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. P. 165.

Conditionalis Clausula (conditio, a condition), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. P. 164.

Congruentia (congruere, to agree), Agreement. §§ 88-92.

Conjugatio (conjugare, to yoke together), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 41 48.

Conjunctio (conjugere, to unite), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85 152.

Conjunctivus Modus, Conjunctive Mood; the Thought-mood in Latin, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. Pp. 152, 157.

Consecutio Temporum (consequi, to ensue), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. P. 172.

Consecutiva Clausula, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting consequence, introduced by ut, so that. P. 162.

Consonantes Litterae (consonare, to sound with). Consonants. § 3.

SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

	MUTES		LIQUIDS			SPIRANTS				DOUBLE
	Hard	Soft	Rangue	Smooth	Nasal	Sibilant	Pure	Mixed	Semivowel	
GUTTURAL, or Throat sounds }	^c (k, q)	g	..	..	..	..	h	..	..	x
DENTAL, or Teeth sounds }	t	d	r	l	n	s	..	..	j	z
LABIAL, or Lip sounds }	p	b	..	..	m	..	..	..	v	

Contractio (contrahere, to draw together), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.

Copulativa Verba (copulare, *to couple*), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N.S. II.

Besides *Sum*, they comprise the Verbs—

forem, might be

fit, become

appareo, appear

existo, stand forth

evado, turn out

audio, am called

maneo, remain

nascor, am borne

videor, seem

with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called *Facitive* (*facere*), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word: such Passives are—

efficior, am made

creor, am created

designor, am marked out

legor, am chosen

eligor, am elected

declaror, am declared

renuntior, am proclaimed

nominor, nuncupor, am named

salutor, am saluted

appellor, vocor, am called

inscribor, am entitled

aestimator, am esteemed

numerator, am reckoned

credor, am believed

existimor, putor, am thought

ducor, am deemed

habeor, am held

censeor, am counted

agnoscor, am acknowledged

dicor, am said

narror, am related

feror, perhibeor, trador, am reported

invenior, reperior, am found

deprehendor, am discovered

arguor, probor, am proved.

Correlativa, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

D.

Dativus Casus (*dare, to give*; Gr. *δοτική πτώσις*), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N. S. IV.

Declinatio (*declinare, to slope down*), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See Case.

Defectiva (*deficere, to fail*), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

Deminutiva (*deminuere, to lessen*). N. E. I. D. 2.

Deponens Verbum, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

E.

Ellipsis (*ἔλλειπειν, to leave out*), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N. S. I. E. 1.

Enclitica, (*ἐγκλίειν, to lean on*), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: *as, -quē, -vē, -nē*.

***Enthesis** (*ἐντιθέναι, to place in*), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, or Condition. See *Attributum*.

Enuntiatio (*enuntiare, to state*), a statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. P. 155.

Enuntiatio Obliqua, Oblique Enuntiation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative and Infinitive). Pp. 155, 156, 164.

Epithet (ἐπιθετον), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: *vir bonus*, a good man. § 87. See *Attributum*.

F.

Factiva Verba (facere, to make), Factive Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. D.
Figura, *Figure* (figere, to fashion), a term used in Grammar for a 'Fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).

Finalis Clausula (finis, end), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by *ut*, *in order that*; *ne*, *lest*, &c, P. 163.

Finium Verbum, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called Verbum Infinitum) are free. § 42.

Flexio (flectere, to bend), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

G.

Genetivus (γενική πτῶσις), the Genitive (Propriative) Case. § 126-136. N. S. VI.

Genus (*kind*), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, *neither* of the two former.

Gerundium: *Gerundivum* (gerere, to perform). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in *dus*, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (*oriundus*, *volvenda dies*, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.

Graecismus, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

H.

Historic Infinitive, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. A.

I.

Imperativus Modus (imperare, to command), the Will-mood in Verbs, which commands or entreats. § 42. Pp. 150, 151.

Impersonalia Verba (in, not, persona, person), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 79, 145. N. S. IX. F.

Indicativus Modus (indicare, to show), the Fact-mood in Verbs. § 42. P. 150.

Infinitiva Clausula, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enuntiatio Obliqua*.

Infinitivum (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.

Infinitum Verbum. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finium Verbum*.

Interjectio (interjicere, to throw between). §§ 86, 137. • • •

Interrogatio Infinitiva, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. P. 161.

Interrogatio Obliqua, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. Pp. 155, 158, 162.

Intransitiva Verba, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. D. (See *Transitiva*).

K

Kalendarium, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month; so called from *Kalendae*, the *Calends*, or first day in it. N. E. IV. C.

L.

Locativus (locus, *place*), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. V. G. 2.

M.

Mobilis Substantiva (*mobilis*, *moveable*). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. I. D. 1.

Modus (*manner*), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42. P. 150.

N.

Negativae Particulæ (*negare*, *to deny*), Negatives. § 82. N. S. IX. A.

Nomina (Gr. *ὀνόμα*, *a name*), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

Nominativus Casus (*nominare*, *to name*. Gr. *ὀνομαστικὴ πτῶσις*). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case*.

**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. I. C.

Numero'ia, words representing Number. N. E. IV. A.

Nummularia Res, Roman money. N. E. IV. D.

O.

Objective Relation, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

Objectum (*objicere*, *to cast in the way*), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative), if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. IV.

Obliqua Oratio (Oblique Discourse), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses: Oblique Enuntiation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enuntiation. Pp. 154, 156, 167, &c.

Oblique Subject, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.

Oblique Complement, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N. S. II. A., III. D.

Participium (partem capere, to take a share), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 46, 142. N. S. IX. D.

Partes Orationis, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

Particulæ, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

Partitiva Vocabula (partiri, to divide). N. S. VI. B.

Passiva Vox (pati, to suffer), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so 'suffers.' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vertor, I turn myself. For *Passive Construction* see N. S. IX. E.

Patronymicum (πατήρ, father; ὄνομα, name), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

Perfectum (perficere, to complete) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. Pp. 151, 171.

Perfect-stem. §§ 46, 48.

Periphrastic Conjugation (περιφράζειν, to speak circuitously). § 64.

Petitio Obliqua. As Petition (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so Oblique Petition is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Pp. 155, 161, 171.

Phrasis (φράσις), a Phrase; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an Enthesis; as, multae artis, ruri, Preposition with Case, etc.

Position (situs), a term in Prosody to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

Predicate (praedicare, to declare), that member of a Sentence, by which something is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in such terms that authors write. Neither sum, nor any other Copulative Verb, exactly corresponds to the logical Copula; nor is the word, which any such Verb links to the Subject, in every instance identical with a logical Predicate. For these reasons (while Madvig and most other Grammarians are followed in allowing the term Predicate in Grammar to a Finite Verb) the term Complement is used to express the word or phrase linked by a Copulative Verb to the Subject, and so completing a Simple Sentence. P. 75.

Præpositio (præponere, to place before), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N. S. IX. C.

Predicative Relation, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

Present-Stem. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, fi-*n*-do, fra-*n*-go, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, la-*m*-bo, ru-*m*-po.
 2. *N* is suffixed (a) to a Vowel-character: as, si-*n*-o li-*n*-o; (b) to a Liquid-character: as, tem-*n*-o, cer-*n*-o, sper-*n*-o, ster-*n*-o. So po-*n*-o for pos-*n*-o.
 3. *Sc* is suffixed (a) to a Vowel-character: as, pa-*sc*-o, ira-*sc*-or, cre-*sc*-o; &c. (b) to a Consonant-character with *i*: as, ulc-*isc*-or. So di-*sc*-o for dic-*sc*-o. Na-*n*-c-*isc*-or for nac-or.
 4. *L* is doubled: as, pel-*l*-o, tol-*l*-o.
 5. *T* is suffixed to Guttural-character: as, flec-*t*-o, pec-*t*-o, nec-*t*-o.
 6. A Guttural is cast out: as, stru-o for stru-*c*-o, vi-vo for vi-*g*-uo.
 7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, gi-*g*-no for gen-o, si-*st*-o for sto.
- **Prolative Relation* (proferre, to extend), that in which Predication is extended by an Infinitive (therefore called *Prolative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. vii. *B*. Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.
- Pronomen* (Gr. *ἄντωνυμία*), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.
- Propria Nomina*, Proper Names; Nouns peculiar to Person or Place.
- Proprietary Relation*, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.
- Prosodia* (*προσθεῖν*, to sing in accord), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.
- Protasis*. See *Apodosis*.

Q.

Qualitative Relation. See *Attributum*.

R.

Receptive Relation (recipere, to receive), that of the Dative, as Case of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104–109. N. S. iv.

Recta Oratio, Direct Discourse, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from *Oratio Obliqua*. Pp. 155, 156.

Reduplicatio (reduplicare, to redouble), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

Reflexiva Pronomina (reflectere, to bend back), Reflexive Pronouns: se, with its Possessive suus; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. viii.

Relation. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Qualitative; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Proprietary; (7) Prolative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

Relativum Pronomen (referre, to refer), the Relative Pronoun qui, so called because referred to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91.

N. S. 1. From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them.

Root, the common part of kindred words. § 11.

S.

Scansio (scandere, to climb), the measurement of feet in a verse.

Sententia (sentire, to express thought), a Sentence. §§ 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enuntiatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences, one being the Principal, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. Pp. 155, &c.

Stem, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

Subjectum (subjicere, to place under), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. 2. II.

**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to *Oratio Obliqua*. If *Oratio Obliqua* is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suboblique.' Pp. 156, 159, 168, &c.

Substantial Clauses, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) in Oblique Construction. See *Oratio Obliqua*.

Substantivum (substare, to stand beneath), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

Superlativus Gradus (superferre, to carry above), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35-37.

Supine-Stem. § 47.

Supinum, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

Syllaba (συνλαμβάνειν, to take together), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

Syncope (συγκόπτειν, to cut short), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

Synesis (σύνεσις, meaning), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. E. 3.

Syntaxis (συντάσσειν, to arrange together), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

T.

Temporalis Clausula, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. P. 163.

Tempus (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

**Trajectiva* (trajicere, to throw over); Verbs and Adjectives, which by their meaning suggest a Recipient. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs); Trajective Verbs Transitive (Qui-quiv Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

Transitiva Verba (transire, to pass over), Verbs, which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

V.

Verb *ο*. *Being* (sum, esse). Gr. *ῥημα ὑπαρκτικόν*. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N.S. II.

Verbum (Gr. *ῥημα, the word*), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as *the Word* which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

* *Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N.S. I. C.

Vocals (vox, voice), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign *†* represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (optūmus, optūmus), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

Standard vowel

a

Sharp medial e o Flat medial

Sharp semiconsonant i † u Flat semiconsonant
Medial

J and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* represents the consonant power of *i* (i-consonans); *u* the vowel-power of *v* (v-vocalis).

Vocativus Casus (vocare, to call), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

Vowel-change, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. §§ 81, 84. N.E. II.

Vox, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39.

Note.—How the Romans spoke Latin can never be known with precision. Some sounds are lost: as those of *f*, *ch*, *th*, *ph*, *rh*, *ei*, *eu*. Others are matter of conjecture: as that *ae*=*ai* in French *Mai*, *oe*=*oy* in *boy*, *au*=*ow* in *cow*; *y*-vowel=Greek *υ*. It is probable that *c*=*k* always, never being soft as in *cell*, *city*; that *g* also was hard always, as in *get*, *guard*, never soft, as in *gentle*, *origin*; that *v*=Engl. *w* nearly, and *i*-consonans (*j*)=English *y*-consonant.

As to vowels, in the Grammar the following line is given to express the strong and short sounds of each: the first four words being sounded as in French, the last as in Italian:

Quīnine, dēmēsne, pāpā, prōpōse, Zūlū.

If four sounds are allowed to each vowel, and shown as 1. Italic: 2. with short mark *˘*: 3. Roman: 4. with long mark *—*; we may take the following words as containing them: a, ād-a-mān-dās; e, rē-vell-e-rēs; i, in-scrib-i-tīs; o, de nōv-o corp-o-re; u, fulg-u-ra mū-tū-a.

The learner must take care never to sound *a* as in *bāse* (which is the long *a*-sound); never to sound *e* as in *thēse* (which is the long *i*-sound); nor *i* as in *ice*; nor *u* as in *use*; these being diphthong sounds. See 'Public School Latin Grammar,' Append. B.

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS,

WITH ENGLISH VOCABULARIES.

EDITED BY JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. OXON.

GREEK TEXTS:-

FABLES from ÆSOP, & MYTHS
from PALÆPHATUS. 1s. 6d.

EURIPIDES, Hecuba. 2s.

HOMER, Iliad. Book I. 1s.

HOMER, Odyssey. Book I. 1s.

LUCIAN, Select Dialogues. 1s.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Books I.

II. IV. V. VI. 1s. 6d. each.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Book II. 1s.

XENOPHON, Anabasis. Book VII. 2s.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS, Book I. Text only. 3d.

THE FOUR GOSPELS IN GREEK, with an English-Greek
Lexicon. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. OXON. Square 32mo. 6s.

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL.
Price 2s. 6d.

St. MARK'S GOSPEL. 1s. 6d.

St. LUKE'S GOSPEL. 2s. 6d.

St. JOHN'S GOSPEL. 1s. 6d.

The ACTS of the APOSTLES.
Price 2s. 6d.

St. PAUL'S EPISTLE to the
ROMANS. 1s. 6d.

LATIN TEXTS:-

CÆSAR, Gallic War, Books I. II. V.
VI. 1s. each.

CÆSAR, Gallic War, Books III. and
IV. 9d. each.

CÆSAR, Gallic War, Book VII. 1s. 6d.

CÆSAR, Gallic War, Book I. Text
only, 3d.

CICERO, Cato Major (Old Age). 1s. 6d.

CICERO, Lælius (Friendship). 1s. 6d.

EUTROPIUS, Roman History. Books
I. & II. 1s.

EUTROPIUS, Roman History. Books
III. & IV. 1s.

HORACE, Odes. Books I. II. & IV.
Price 1s. each.

HORACE, Odes. Book III. 1s. 6d.

HORACE, Epodes & Carmina Secularia.
Price 1s.

NEPOS, Miltiades, Cimón, Pausanias,
Aristides. 9d.

OVID, Selections from the Epistles and
Fasti. 1s.

OVID, Select Myths from the Metamor-
phoses. 9d.

PHÆDRUS, Select Fables. 9d.

PHÆDRUS, Fables. Books I. & II. 1s.

SALLUST, Bellum Catilinarium.
Price 1s. 6d.

VIRGIL, Georgics. Book IV. 1s.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Books I. to IV.
Price 1s.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Books VII. to XII.
Price 1s. 6d. each.

VIRGIL, Æneid. Book I. Text
only. 3d.

LIVY, BOOKS XXII. and XXIII.

The Latin Text with English Explanatory and Grammatical Notes, and
a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.
OXON. 12mo. price 2s. 6d. each Book.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

WHITE'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Royal 8vo. 21s.

A LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

By the Rev. J. T. WHITE, D.D. of Corpus Christi College, Oxford
and Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford.

Square 12mo. 3s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

Square 12mo. 3s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

Square 12mo. 5s.

THE JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

LONGMANS' ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS.

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

Book I. With Notes, Introduction, and Vocabulary.

By J. W. BARTRAM, M.A.

Sometime Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

With Folding-out Coloured Map, and 64 Maps, Plans and Illustrations
in the Text. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO. 39 Paternoster Row, London
New York and Bombay.

